

Introduction

Thank you for purchasing SoftBank 831N.

- For proper handset use, read this guide.
- Keep this guide in a convenient place for reference.
- Accessible SoftBank services may vary by service area, subscription, etc.

SoftBank 831N is compatible with 3G network technology.

Notes

- Copying this guide in whole or part without authorization is prohibited.
- Content of this guide is subject to change without prior notice.
- Efforts have been made to ensure the accuracy and clarity of this guide. Please contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-53) about unclear or missing information.

Before Using This Guide

- SoftBank 831N is referred to as “handset” in this guide.
 - Most operation descriptions are based on default settings and begin in Standby.
 - Sample screenshots* are provided for reference only. Actual handset windows, menus, etc. may differ in appearance.
 - Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.
 - “(Japanese)” appears next to functions or services which require Japanese ability to use.
- * Standby Display used in this guide is based on SoftBank 831N Silver model. Design theme of menus and windows is based on default setting **Silver**.

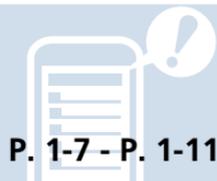
	Getting Started	1
	Basic Operations	2
	Calling	3
	Security	4
	Mail	5
	Internet	6
	Camera	7
	TV	8
	Music Player & S! Appli	9
	Tools	10
	Data Management	11
	Connectivity	12
	Customization	13
	Appendix	14

Search Guide

● Function & Service Name Search

Table of Contents	P. viii
Menu List	P. 14-20
Index	P. 14-41

● Display Indicators



● Learning Basics

P. 2-2 - P. 2-7

● Solving Problems

Troubleshooting	P. 14-6
Warranty & After Sales Service	P. 14-52

● Objective Search



Mastering
Basics

My Number &
E-mail Address

Customizing
Handset

831N Features

SoftBank Mobile
Features

<p>Basic Operations</p> <p>Learn basic menu navigation and key operations.</p> <p>P. 2-2</p>	<p>Text Entry</p> <p>Enter text for composing messages, creating Phone Book entries, etc.</p> <p>P. 2-9</p>	<p>Messaging Services</p> <p>Use S! Mail or SMS to send text messages. Attach and send files via S! Mail.</p> <p>P. 5-2</p>	<p>Mobile Internet</p> <p>Use Yahoo! Keitai to access Mobile Internet sites tailored for SoftBank customers.</p> <p>P. 6-2</p>
<p>My Phone Number</p> <p>Check your phone number on handset.</p> <p>P. 1-23</p>	<p>My Account Details</p> <p>Save your contact information to Account Details to send it to your friends.</p> <p>P. 1-23</p>	<p>Customize E-mail Address</p> <p>Change the account name (part before @) of your e-mail address.</p> <p>P. 13-15</p>	<p>Exchange Information Wirelessly</p> <p>Send your e-mail address to compatible devices via infrared.</p> <p>P. 12-2</p>
<p>Download Music</p> <p>Download songs from Chaku-Uta® sites and set as ringtones or play back on Music Player.</p> <p>P. 9-4</p>	<p>Set Ringtones</p> <p>Set your favorite songs as ringtones.</p> <p>P. 13-8</p>	<p>Wallpaper</p> <p>Set your favorite image to appear in Standby with clock or calendar.</p> <p>P. 13-3</p>	<p>Add Shortcuts</p> <p>Add frequently used functions to Desktop Icons.</p> <p>P. 2-3</p>
<p>Music Player</p> <p>Download songs and play them on handset.</p> <p>P. 9-2</p>	<p>Camera & Video Camera</p> <p>Shoot still images and videos.</p> <p>P. 7-2</p>	<p>TV</p> <p>Handset supports One Seg Digital TV.</p> <p>P. 8-2</p>	<p>Osaifu-Keitai®</p> <p>Use your handset for payment of purchases with electronic money or as a commuter ticket or point card.</p> <p>P. 10-2</p>
<p>Yahoo! Keitai Sites</p> <p>A special portal site for SoftBank handsets enhances your Internet browsing experience.</p> <p>P. 6-3</p>	<p>Graphic Mail</p> <p>Create HTML messages by changing font and background colors, inserting images, etc.</p> <p>P. 5-4</p>	<p>Gaming Device</p> <p>Play S! Appli games downloaded from Yahoo! Keitai sites.</p> <p>P. 9-8</p>	<p>S! Quick News</p> <p>Subscribe to News and receive automatic updates regularly.</p> <p>P. 6-12</p>

Intellectual Property Rights

- Duplicating, modifying or publicly transmitting copyright-protected contents (e.g. text, images, music, software) photographed or downloaded from websites without the permission of the copyright holders is prohibited by copyright laws, with the exception that the duplication or quotation of those is made only for personal use.

Shooting or recording a demonstration, performance or exhibition may be prohibited in some cases even if it is for personal use.

Shooting a photo of a person using this product without his or her permission, or posting a photo of a person you shot on websites without his or her permission may constitute an infringement of portrait rights.

- S! Appli, S! Mail, PC Site Browser and Graphic Mail are registered trademarks or trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- SOFTBANK, SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- Yahoo! and the "Yahoo!" or "Y!" logos are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc. in the U.S.
- Osaifu-Keitai® is a registered trademark of NTT DOCOMO.
- T9® is trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.
- The microSD™ logo is a trademark.



- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:

- To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
- To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
- To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LA

When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.

- This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated. This product contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ software under license from Adobe Systems Incorporated. Copyright© 1996-2009 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
Adobe, Flash and Flash Lite are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002 - 2009 Aplix Corporation. All rights reserved.
JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.



- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Chaku-Uta and Chaku-Uta Full are trademarks and/or registered trademarks of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc. in Japan and/or other countries.
- This product contains NetFront Mobile Client Suite of ACCESS CO., LTD.
ACCESS, ACCESS logo and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in the United States, Japan and other countries.
©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.
- This product is equipped with IrFront by ACCESS CO., LTD.
©2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
ACCESS and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and other countries.
- Multitask, Emotion-Expressing Mail, Privacy Angle, Life History Viewer, Quick Info, Word Prediction, Tomo-Den, FontAvenue and One Touch Open are trademarks or registered trademarks of NEC Corporation.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ MASCOT CAPSULE® are registered trademarks of HI CORPORATION.



- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.
- Hyper Clear Voice is commercially available based on the license for SRS VIP+ technology from SRS Labs, Inc. SRS, VIP+, and the  symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- TruMedia and Dialog Clarity technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
TruMedia, Dialog Clarity, SRS and the  symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.
For more details, visit “GPL・LGPL等について” at <http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/>
- This product is equipped with the font FontAvenue product by NEC Corporation.
-  is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- Microsoft, Windows and Windows Vista are trademarks or registered trademarks in the United States or other countries of Microsoft Corporation (USA).



Intellectual Property Rights

- Microsoft Windows Operating System is indicated in its abbreviated form as Windows.
- OS (Japanese) are abbreviated as follows in this guide.
 - Windows Vista is an abbreviation of Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).
 - Windows XP is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
 - Windows 2000 is an abbreviation of Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.
- This product is antibacterial-coated.
Antibacterial part: Handset body (excluding Display, keys and terminals)
Inorganic antimicrobial agent, coating: JP0122112A0003N
The SIAA logo indicates the quality control and information disclosure for this product conform to the guidelines of the Society of Industrial Technology for Antimicrobial Articles, as a result of evaluations conducted under ISO 22196.
- The other company names and brand names described in this guide are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.



Table of Contents

Before Using This Guide	i
Search Guide	ii
Intellectual Property Rights.....	iv
Table of Contents.....	viii
Package Contents.....	x
Safety Precautions	xi
General Notes.....	xix

1 Getting Started

Handset Parts.....	1-2
Display.....	1-7
USIM Card	1-12
Battery & Charger.....	1-15
Power On/Off	1-19
Mobile Manners	1-21
Codes.....	1-22
Other Basic Information.....	1-23

2 Basic Operations

Menu Operations	2-2
Multitask.....	2-8
Text Entry.....	2-9
Phone Book.....	2-17
Advanced Features.....	2-23

3 Calling

Overview.....	3-2
Voice Call.....	3-3
Video Call	3-7
Call Logs	3-10
Speed Dialing.....	3-12
Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming).....	3-13
Optional Services.....	3-14
Advanced Features	3-16

4 Security

PIN Settings.....	4-2
Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use	4-3
Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls	4-5
Secret Modes	4-6

5 Mail

Overview.....	5-2
Sending Messages.....	5-3
Receiving & Opening Messages	5-6
Quake Alert.....	5-9
Handling Messages	5-12
Advanced Features.....	5-17

6 Internet

Overview	6-2
Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
PC Site Browser.....	6-5
Page Operations	6-7
Bookmarks & Saved Pages.....	6-10
S! Quick News.....	6-12
S! Info Channel	6-13
Advanced Features	6-15

7 Camera

Overview	7-2
Capturing Still Images	7-5
Recording Videos.....	7-7
Various Features	7-9
Advanced Features	7-12

8 TV

About TV	8-2
Watching TV.....	8-5
Recording/Playing Programs.....	8-8
View/Record Timer	8-10
Advanced Features	8-12

9 Music Player & S! Appli

About Music Player	9-2
Music Playback	9-5
S! Appli.....	9-8
Advanced Features.....	9-10

10 Tools

Osaifu-Keitai®	10-2
Life History Viewer.....	10-5
Schedule.....	10-7
To Do List	10-10
Text Memo.....	10-12
Voice Memo	10-13
Calculator	10-14
Alarm.....	10-15
Pedometer.....	10-17
Magnifying Glass.....	10-19
Bar Code Reader	10-20
Text Reader.....	10-22
Advanced Features.....	10-25

11 Data Management

About Data Folder	11-2
Accessing Files	11-3
Editing Files.....	11-7
File & Folder Management	11-9

About Memory Card.....	11-10
Managing Memory Cards	11-11
Advanced Features	11-14

12 Connectivity

Infrared.....	12-2
PC Connection.....	12-5

13 Customization

Clock, Display & Sounds.....	13-2
Phone Book & Calls.....	13-12
Mail.....	13-15
Internet.....	13-18
TV.....	13-21
Camera	13-23
Player & S! Appli.....	13-24
Other Settings.....	13-25

14 Appendix

Multitask Combinations.....	14-2
Software Update	14-4
Troubleshooting	14-6
Text Entry Key Assignments.....	14-10
Kuten Code List.....	14-13
Weather Indicators	14-19

Menu List.....	14-20
Specifications	14-36
Index	14-41
Warranty & After Sales	
Service	14-52
Customer Service	14-53

Package Contents

The following items are included in the package with handset.

For additional information on accessories, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-53).

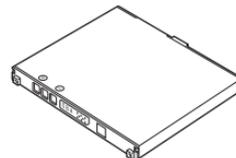
■ Starter Guide



■ Warranty (Handset)

保証書		
商品名	831N 携帯電話本体機	
商品コード	NEAP1 / NEAP2 / NEAP3	
製造番号		
社名	株式会社	種
店名	〒	
店住所	〒	
保証期間	起算日より0年6ヶ月	
保証開始日	平成 年 月 日	
保証店名		

■ Battery (NEBAP1)



- SoftBank 831N supports microSD™ memory card. Purchase a memory card to use related functions.
- Use only specified AC charger (sold separately) to charge handset.

Safety Precautions

- To ensure proper use of your handset, read these safety precautions carefully before use. Keep this guide for future reference.
- Observe these safety precautions to prevent injuries and damages to property.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any loss or damages incurred by you or a third party as a result of missed calls, etc., due to malfunction, erroneous operation or failure of this product.

■ Labels

- Risks of injury or damage from improper use are categorized by levels. Understand these labels before reading this guide.

 DANGER	Great risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use
 WARNING	Risk of death or serious injury ¹ from improper use
 CAUTION	Risk of injury ² or damage to property ³ from improper use

- 1 Serious injury includes: Loss of eyesight, physical injury, high temperature burns, low temperature burns (blisters or reddening caused by prolonged contact with a heat source higher than body temperature), electric shock, fractures, poisoning and other conditions requiring hospitalization or long-term treatment.

- 2 Injury includes: Physical burns (high-temperature and low-temperature), electric shock, and other conditions not requiring hospitalization or long-term treatment.
- 3 Damage to property includes: Incidental damage to structures and household property and/or to pets and livestock.

■ Symbols

- Make sure you understand the following symbols and precautions before reading this guide.

	Action is prohibited.
	Disassembly is prohibited.
	Exposure to liquids is prohibited.
	Handling with wet hands is prohibited.
	Action is compulsory.
	Unplug power cord.

Safety Precautions

- **Handset, Battery, USIM Card, AC Charger (Sold Separately), Desktop Holder (Sold Separately), Memory Card (Not Included), and Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (Sold Separately)**

DANGER

	Use SoftBank specified devices (Battery, AC Charger or Desktop Holder) only. Use of non-specified devices may cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause Charger to overheat, ignite or malfunction.
	Do not disassemble/modify/solder handset. May cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction. Also, Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite. Modification of handset equipment violates statutory regulations and is subject to penalty.
	Keep liquids away from handset. If handset and/or battery is not dried after exposure to fluids (water, pet urine etc.), overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, etc. may occur.
	Do not charge, use or leave handset in places subject to high temperatures (near an open flame or heating equipment, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day). May cause deformation or malfunction; or may cause Battery to leak, overheat, ignite or rupture. Also, the outer housing may become hot resulting in burns.



Do not use excessive force to attach Battery, AC Charger or Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable to handset. Battery or AC Charger may be the wrong way around.

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.

WARNING



Do not place handset, Battery, AC Charger, Desktop Holder or Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable in a microwave oven or pressure cooker, or on top of an induction heating (IH) cooktop.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause handset, AC Charger or Desktop Holder to overheat, emit smoke, ignite or malfunction.



Turn off handset when entering gas stations or other places where flammable gases (propane gas, gasoline, etc.) generate. Do not charge battery in such places.

Gases may ignite.
Before using a mobile phone with Osaifu-Keitai® inside a gas station, be sure to turn it off. (If IC card lock is activated, first deactivate it and turn power off.)



Do not drop or throw handset or expose it to excessive shock.

May cause battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite; or may cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

	<p>If you notice an unusual sound, odor, smoke, etc. while using, charging or storing handset, immediately:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Unplug AC Charger from outlet. 2. Turn handset power off. 3. Remove Battery from handset, being careful of burn or injury. <p>Continued use may cause fire or electric shock.</p>
	<p>Keep liquids (water, pet urine, etc.) and conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments, metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) away from Charger Terminals, External Device Port or Memory Card Slot.</p> <p>May cause short circuit, resulting in fire or malfunction.</p>

CAUTION

	<p>Do not place handset on an uneven or unstable surface.</p> <p>Handset may fall, leading to injuries or handset malfunction. Be particularly careful while charging or when vibrator is activated.</p>
	<p>Keep handset out of reach of infants.</p> <p>Failing to do so may result in small parts being accidentally swallowed or may cause injury.</p>
	<p>When a child uses handset, parent supervision is advised. Provide child with proper instructions.</p> <p>Failing to do so may cause injury, etc.</p>

	<p>Do not store handset in humid or dusty places or in places subject to high temperatures.</p> <p>May cause malfunction.</p>
	<p>Be careful not to pinch your fingers in the hinge when opening handset.</p> <p>Failing to do so may cause injury.</p>
	<p>Do not touch Charger Terminals of Desktop Holder when plugged into an AC outlet.</p> <p>May cause low-temperature burns.</p>

■ Handling Battery

DANGER

- Check battery type on Battery label. Properly use and dispose of Battery according to type.

Label	Battery type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

	<p>Do not throw Battery into a fire.</p> <p>May cause Battery to leak, rupture or ignite.</p>
	<p>Do not puncture Battery with a nail, hit it with a hammer, step on it or subject it to strong impact.</p> <p>May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.</p>

Safety Precautions



Keep metal objects (pins, etc.) away from Battery Terminals. Do not carry or store conductive materials (e.g. pencil lead, metal fragments, metal necklaces, hairpins, etc.) together with Battery.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.



If battery fluid gets into eyes, immediately rinse with clean water and consult a doctor. Do not rub eyes.

Failing to do so may result in loss of eyesight.



WARNING



If battery fluid gets on your skin or clothing, immediately stop handset use and rinse with clean water.

Battery fluid may harm your skin.



If Battery is not fully charged even after specified charging time, stop charging.

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.



If you notice an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration, deformation, etc. while using, charging or storing Battery, remove it from handset and keep it away from fire. Be careful not to burn or injure yourself.

Battery may leak, overheat, rupture or ignite.



If Battery leaks or emits an unusual odor, immediately stop using it and keep it away from fire.

Battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing fire or Battery to rupture.



If any abnormalities (deformation, scratches, etc.) are visible on Battery, immediately discontinue use.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.



Do not allow pets to bite Battery.

May cause Battery to leak, overheat, rupture, ignite; may cause handset malfunction or fire.



CAUTION



Do not dispose of batteries as municipal waste.

Bring used batteries to the nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Be sure to observe local regulations on battery disposal.

■ Handling Handset



WARNING



Do not use while operating a vehicle (car, motorcycle, bicycle, etc.)

May cause a traffic accident. Use of a mobile phone while driving is prohibited by law, and is subject to penalty. Stop vehicle in a safe location (where parking is allowed) before using handset.

	<p>Keep handset power off near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals.</p> <p>Handset may cause these devices to malfunction. Devices that may be affected: Hearing aids, implanted cardiac pacemakers, implanted defibrillators and other electronic medical equipment; fire alarms, automatic doors and other automatic control devices.</p>
	<p>Keep handset power off aboard an aircraft.</p> <p>Handset signal may interfere with aircraft operation. Handset use aboard an aircraft may be subject to penalty. When in-flight use is permitted, observe airline instructions.</p>
	<p>If you have a weak heart, be careful with incoming call vibrator and ring volume settings.</p> <p>These may affect your heart.</p>
	<p>If thunder is heard while outside, immediately turn handset power off and seek shelter.</p> <p>Failing to do so may attract lightning and cause electric shock.</p>
	<p>Do not point infrared beam at a person's eyes.</p> <p>May cause eye injury.</p>
	<p>If you use electronic medical equipment, do not place handset in breast pocket or inner coat pocket.</p> <p>Using handset near electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.</p>
	<p>Keep handset away from your ear when calling in handsfree mode. When using Earphone-Microphone while playing games or music, adjust volume accordingly.</p> <p>Sound at high volume may impair hearing; or surrounding sounds may become inaudible over playback volume, resulting in an accident.</p>

	<p>Do not place handset on the dashboard close to airbags.</p> <p>In case of airbag inflation, handset may hit passengers resulting in injury, malfunction or breakage.</p>
	<p>If Display or Camera Lens is damaged, be careful of broken glass pieces or exposed internal components.</p> <p>Shatter-proof film prevents Display/Camera lens from shattering; however glass fragments and components may cause injury.</p>
	<p>Do not allow fluids, metal pieces or flammable materials to enter USIM Card Slot or Memory Card Slot.</p> <p>May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.</p>

CAUTION

	<p>If skin abnormality occurs with use of handset, immediately discontinue use and consult a doctor.</p> <p>Handset contains metal material. Depending on your physical condition, you may experience itchiness, rash, etc.</p>
	<p>Keep magnetic cards away from handset and make sure that a magnetic card is not trapped when closing handset.</p> <p>Failing to do so may cause magnetic data on a cash card, credit card, telephone card or floppy disk to be lost.</p>
	<p>Do not swing handset by its strap, etc.</p> <p>Handset may strike you or other people; Strap may break causing injury, handset malfunction or breakage.</p>

Safety Precautions

	<p>Use caution when using handset for an extended period; handset may become hot. Skin contact for extended period may cause low-temperature burns.</p>
	<p>Do not bring speaker close to the ear when making calls in handsfree mode or when ring tone/melody is playing. May impair your hearing.</p>
	<p>Be careful not to pinch your fingers or Strap when opening and closing handset. May cause injury or damage.</p>
	<p>Watch TV with adequate lighting and distance from Display. Failing to do so may impair eyesight.</p>
	<p>Do not turn volume up too high when using earphones. Using earphones for extended periods at high volume may impair hearing or harm your ears.</p>
	<p>If Display breaks, do not inhale or touch liquid crystal fluid. If fluid enters your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse with clean water and consult a doctor. If fluid adheres to your skin or clothing, immediately wipe off with alcohol and wash with soap and water. May result in loss of eyesight or skin damage.</p>
	<p>Keep magnetized objects away from handset. May cause operation errors.</p>

	<p>Do not open the handset with One-Touch Open button near people or a face. It may cause the handset to hit you or another person, and may lead to injury.</p>
---	--

■ Handling USIM Card

CAUTION

	<p>Be careful handling the Notch when removing USIM Card (IC chip). May injure your hands or fingers.</p>
---	--

■ Handling AC Charger and Desktop Holder

WARNING

	<p>Do not cover with clothing or bedding during charging. Heat may build up resulting in fire or malfunction.</p>
	<p>Use the specified power supply and voltage. Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction. AC Charger: 100 to 240 V AC (for household AC outlets only) Also, do not use commercially available voltage converters. May cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.</p>

	Unplug AC Charger from outlet before extended periods of handset disuse. Failing to do so may cause electric shock, fire or malfunction.
	If liquid (water, pet urine, etc.) gets into AC Charger, immediately unplug AC Charger from outlet. Failing to do so may cause electric shock, smoke emission or fire.
	If dust accumulates on AC Charger plug, unplug Charger from outlet and wipe with a dry cloth. Failing to do so may cause fire.
	When plugging AC Charger into outlet, keep conductive materials (pencil lead, metal parts, necklaces, hair pins, etc.) away from Desktop Holder terminals, AC Charger plug/terminals and plug Charger firmly into outlet. Failing to do so may cause electric shock, short circuit, fire, etc.
	Do not touch AC Charger with wet hands. May cause electric shock or malfunction.
	If thunder is heard, do not touch AC Charger. May cause electric shock.
	Do not use AC Charger if the cord is damaged. May cause electric shock, overheating or fire.
	Do not use AC Charger and Desktop Holder in humid places such as in bathrooms. May cause electric shock.

	Do not short-circuit Charger Terminals when Charger is plugged into an outlet. Do not touch Charger Terminals with your fingers, etc. May cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.
	Do not place heavy objects on the cord of AC Charger. May cause electric shock or fire.

CAUTION

	When AC Charger is connected to an outlet, do not pull on cord or otherwise subject Charger to strong shock. May cause injury or malfunction.
	Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger from outlet before cleaning. Failing to do so may cause electric shock.
	Do not unplug AC Charger by pulling the cord. Firmly hold plug and unplug AC Charger. Pulling the cord may damage the cord resulting in electric shock or fire.
	Do not charge a wet battery. May cause battery to overheat, ignite or rupture.

Safety Precautions



Unplug Charger from outlet when charging is complete.

Failing to do so may cause fire or malfunction.



■ Near Electronic Medical Equipment

- This section is based on “Guidelines on Safeguarding Medical Equipment from Electromagnetic Waves from Mobile Phones and Other Devices” (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, April 1997), and “Research Report on the Influence of Electromagnetic Waves on Medical Equipment” (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).



WARNING



If you use an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator, carry and use handset at a distance of at least 22 centimeters away from the implanted area.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.



When using electronic medical equipment other than implanted cardiac pacemakers/defibrillators outside of medical institutions, consult device manufacturer about the influence of radio waves.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of electronic medical equipment.



Observe the following in medical institutions. Radio waves from handset may affect electronic medical equipment.

- Do not bring mobile phones into an operating room, ICU (Intensive Care Unit) or CCU (Coronary Care Unit).
- Turn off mobile phones in hospital wards. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.
- Turn off mobile phones even in lobbies or areas where use is permitted if there is electronic medical equipment nearby.
- Observe the instructions of individual medical institutions and do not use or bring mobile phones into prohibited areas.



Keep handset power off in crowded places such as rush hour trains; a person with an implanted cardiac pacemaker or implanted defibrillator may be nearby. Disable auto power-on functions (alarm, etc.) before turning off mobile phones.

Radio waves may interfere with the operation of implanted cardiac pacemakers or implanted defibrillators.

General Notes

Usage Basics

- Handset use may be disrupted when outside the service area or where signals are weak. Calls may be suddenly cut off when moving to a place with poor signal reception (e.g. inside/next to a tall building, in a tunnel, underground or in mountainous areas).
- Take care not to disturb other people when using handset in public places.
- If you receive a call while walking, move to a safe place before answering.
- SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages arising from loss or alteration of data (Phone Book, image/sound files, etc.) stored on your handset or memory card as a result of accident or malfunction. Back up important data such as Phone Book entries.
- Handset is a wireless station under Japanese Radio Law. You may be requested to submit your handset for inspection based on this law.
- Using handset near a landline phone, TV or radio may affect the operation of these devices. Use handset as far away as possible from these devices.
- Be aware of eavesdropping. Handset employs a digital signal that provides a high level of privacy protection. However, the possibility of eavesdropping by a third party using special means cannot be ruled out.
<Eavesdropping>
Interception of radio signals by a third party during communication, either intentionally or accidentally
- Do not trap Strap or other objects when opening and closing handset. Doing so may cause malfunction or damage handset.
- Using handset on trains or other public transportation may, in some rare cases, affect their electronic devices.
- A call may not be connected or you may hear noises:
 - In an extremely cold place (e.g. freezer storehouse) where handset may not operate normally
 - Near metal furniture which may interfere with signal transmission
 - Near electromagnetic sources or magnetized items, including electric products, audio-visual equipment and office appliances (e.g. computer, microwave oven, speaker, TV set, radio, fax machine, fluorescent lamp, word processor, electric kotatsu, inverter-driven air conditioner, electromagnetic cooker)
- If Battery appears deformed or scratched from external impact, contact Customer Assistance.
- Do not sit with handset in back pocket of trousers or skirt. Do not place at bottom of bag where handset will be subject to excessive weight. May cause malfunction.
- When using handset for the first time or after an extended period of disuse, charge Battery beforehand.
- Battery operating time varies by the usage environment and Battery condition.

General Notes

- Do not charge Battery:
 - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
 - Near a landline phone, TV or radio
- Although AC Charger may become warm while charging, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not subject handset to excessive shock. Do not deform Charger Terminals. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Charge in a location with an ambient temperature within the appropriate range (5 to 35 °C).
- When Battery life nears its end, it may expand slightly. This is not a malfunction.
- FeliCa reader/writer uses the unlicensed 13.56 MHz frequency. Maintain sufficient distance between other reader/writers in use nearby. Make sure mobile phones or other wireless stations operating at the same frequency are not nearby.
- Keep handset away from strong magnetic force. May cause malfunction.
- Do not scratch Display with metal objects, etc. Doing so may damage Display resulting in malfunction or breakage.

Inside Cars

- Do not use handset while driving. Doing so may compromise safe driving and cause an accident. Handset operation in a car may be punishable by law.
- Before using handset, stop the car in a safe place.
- Handset use may affect electronics in some car models. Confirm with your car dealer whether sufficient magnetic protection measures are implemented in your car. Failing to do so may compromise safe driving.

Handling

- Keep away from liquids and moisture. Handset, Battery, AC Charger, Desktop Holder, Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable and USIM Card are not waterproof. Do not use these devices in the rain or in other humid places (e.g. bathrooms). When carrying handset near your body (pockets, etc.), moisture from sweat may corrode internal parts and cause malfunction. Damage caused by moisture, as mentioned above, is not covered by the warranty and may be irreparable.
- Handset's color LCD may be treated with special coating for enhanced visibility. To avoid scratching Display, clean handset carefully using a dry, soft cloth (e.g. eyeglass cloth). If moisture or soil is left on Display, the coating may stain or peel off. Do not use alcohol, thinner, benzene or detergent, as it may cause discoloration and remove printed logos.
- Occasionally clean Terminals with a dry cotton swab. Soiled Terminals may cause poor contact resulting in power failure and insufficient charging.

- Do not place handset near an air conditioner vent. Condensation may form due to abrupt temperature changes, leading to internal corrosion and malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to handset and Battery. Placing handset in an overpacked bag or sitting down with handset in your pocket may damage Display, Internal Circuit Board or Battery, and cause malfunction. Doing so with external device connected to External Device Port may damage connector, leading to malfunction.
- Although handset becomes warm during use or charging, it is not a malfunction.
- Do not leave the Camera Lens exposed to direct sunlight. Doing so may discolor or burn Optical Element.
- Do not affix thick stickers or labels to the Display or Keypad side. Doing so may result in malfunction.
- Do not leave Battery uninstalled or uncharged for an extended period of time; may alter or erase saved settings and data. SoftBank accepts no liability for any damages resulting from such loss or alteration.
- Do not store depleted Battery. Doing so may degrade performance and shorten life of Battery.
- Keep the covers of External Device Port and Memory Card Slot closed. Dust or water inside handset may cause malfunction.
- When removing Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable or AC Charger from External Device Port, do not pull the cord, hold the connector. Pulling the cord may result in wire breakage or malfunction.
- If you use an outlet with pullout prevention feature, refer to the instruction manual of the outlet.
- Avoid extremely cold and high temperatures. Use handset at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C, and humidity of 45 to 85 %. If handset is left in an extremely hot place, handset may power off automatically.
- Battery is a consumable item. Operating time varies by conditions of use; however when operation time becomes extremely short even after a full charge, purchase a new Battery. Use only specified battery.
- Charge Battery at an ambient temperature of 5 to 35 °C.
- FeliCa reader/writer complies with Japanese wireless standards. Usage while abroad may be subject to penalty.
- Handset's IC Card authentication complies with and has obtained certification for Japanese wireless standards. Usage while abroad may be subject to penalty.
- Do not insert USIM Card with labels or stickers affixed to it. May cause malfunction.
- When connecting an external device, do not insert connector into External Device Port at an angle. When external device is connected, do not pull the cord.
- Do not use handset without Battery Cover. Battery may dislodge and result in malfunction or breakage.

Camera

Creating public disturbances from using handset may be subject to penalties based on applicable laws and regulations (e.g. nuisance prevention ordinance by municipal governments).

Copyrights

Copyrighted materials, such as music, images, computer programs and databases, and their respective copyright holders are protected by copyright laws. Duplication of copyrighted materials is permitted only for individual or home use. Duplications (including data conversion), modifications, transfers or network distributions of copyrighted materials for purposes other than stated above without permission of the copyright holders constitute an infringement of copyrights and violation of copyright holders' rights, potentially causing claims for reparations or criminal punishment.

Always observe applicable copyright laws when making copies using handset and recording materials using handset camera.

The software installed in this handset is a copyrighted material and involves copyrights and human rights of copyright holders which are protected by copyright laws. Do not duplicate, modify, alter, detach from the hardware, disassemble, decompile or reverse-engineer the software in whole or in part by yourself, nor allow any third party to do the same, either.

Functional Limitations

After handset upgrade, subscription cancellation or long periods of handset disuse, TV becomes unavailable.

Caution

Do not use handset if it has been altered. Using an altered device is a violation of the Radio Law.

This handset is certified to conform to the technical standards for specific radio equipment based on the Radio Law, and Technical Conformity Mark  is printed on the model name seal as certification. If you remove screws and make alterations inside of handset, the technical standards conformity certification becomes invalid. Do not use handset with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law.

SAR Certification Information

831N meets the technical standards set by the Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC) regarding radio wave absorption by a human body.

These technical standards have been established on a scientific basis to prevent radio waves emitted from wireless devices such as mobile phones that are used close to a human head from affecting human health. These standards require that the SAR (Specific Absorption Rate), an indicator of the amount of average radio frequency energy absorbed in the side of a human head, must not exceed the permissive value of 2 W/kg*. This value includes a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and physical size. The value is equal to the international guideline recommended by the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) that has a cooperative relationship with the World Health Organization (WHO).

* The technical standards are stipulated in the Radio Law (Article 14-2 of Ordinance Regulating Radio Equipment).

The highest SAR value is 0.535 W/kg for 831N. This value was obtained in accordance with the MIC testing procedure with handset transmitting at its highest permitted power level. While there may be differences in SAR levels among individual products, they all meet the MIC's permissible value. Because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power level required to communicate with base stations, the actual SAR of handset during a call is usually below the highest value.

For more information about SAR, see the following websites:

- Ministry of Internal Affairs and Communications (MIC)
<http://www.tele.soumu.go.jp/e/sys/ele/index.htm>
- Association of Radio Industries and Businesses (ARIB)
<http://www.arib-emf.org/initiation/sar.html> (Japanese)

SoftBank's Body SAR Policy

- Body SAR: Value obtained from continuously talking with handset placed on the body using earphone-microphone at maximum transmission power.
- Specific Absorption Rate (SAR): Value obtained from talking continuously for six minutes.
- Placement on the body: Measurements are taken with the rear of handset facing the body at a distance of 1.5 cm as the standard handset position. In order to comply with radio frequency exposure requirements, use an accessory (e.g. belt clip, holster) that does not contain metallic parts to maintain a 1.5 cm separation between the body and handset.

For more information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (Japanese):
<http://www.softbankmobile.co.jp/ja/info/public/emf/emf02.html>

European RF Exposure Information

831N is a radio transmitter and receiver. This product has been confirmed not to exceed the limits recommended by international guidelines for radio frequency.

These guidelines were developed by the independent scientific organization International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) and include a substantial safety margin to assure the safety of all persons, regardless of age and health.

The influence on the human body of radio waves emitted from mobile phones is measured employing a unit known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR limit for mobile devices is 2 W/kg. The maximum SAR value for this model handset, when placed on the ear, is 0.548 W/kg. As mobile devices offer a range of functions, they can be used in other positions, such as on the body as described in SoftBank's Body SAR Policy. In this case, the maximum SAR value is 0.439 W/kg*.

Since the SAR is measured at the highest transmitting power level, the actual SAR during a call is usually much smaller. This is because mobile phones are designed to operate at their minimum power levels necessary to communicate with base stations.

The World Health Organization (WHO) has stated that present scientific information about mobile phone use does not indicate any adverse effects on the human body. They recommend limiting the talking time or using a handsfree device to keep the mobile phone away from the head and body to reduce influence of exposure to radio waves.

Additional information can be found at the WHO website:

<http://www.who.int/emf>

* Measurements with handset placed on the body are carried out in accordance with the FCC standards. The values are based on European requirements.

Declaration of Conformity

CE 0168

831N is declared to conform with the essential requirements of European Union Directive 1999/5/EC Radio and Telecommunications Terminal Equipment Directive 3.1(a), 3.1(b) and 3.2.

The Declaration of Conformity can be found on the following website:

<http://www.n-keitai.com/>

Minding Mobile Manners

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Getting Started

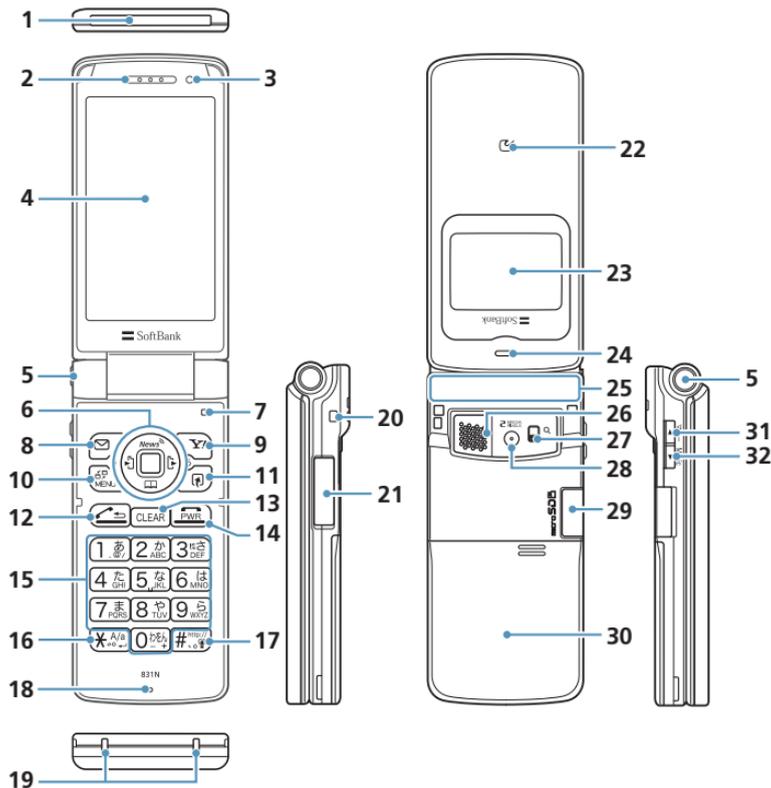
Handset Parts	1-2	Other Basic Information	1-23
Basic Key Operations.....	1-3	Checking Battery Level	1-23
One-Touch Open	1-6	My Phone Number	1-23
Display	1-7	Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable.....	1-23
Display Indicators	1-7	Side Key Guard	1-24
External Display (Indicator display).....	1-9		
USIM Card	1-12		
Before Using USIM Card	1-12		
Other Notes on USIM Cards.....	1-12		
USIM PINs.....	1-13		
USIM Card Installation	1-14		
Battery & Charger	1-15		
Notes on Charging Battery	1-15		
Battery Installation.....	1-15		
Charging Battery	1-17		
Power On/Off	1-19		
Power On	1-19		
Power Off	1-19		
Mobile Manners	1-21		
Activating Manner Mode	1-21		
Codes	1-22		
Security Code.....	1-22		
Center Access Code	1-22		
Network Password	1-22		

1

Handset Parts

1

Getting Started



- 1 Infrared Port
- 2 Earpiece
- 3 Front Camera
- 4 Display
- 5 One-Touch Open Key
- 6 Multi Selector 
- 7 Light Sensor
- 8 Mail Key 
- 9 Yahoo! Keitai Key 
- 10 Menu Key 
- 11 Shortcut Key 
- 12 Send Key 
- 13 Clear/Back Key 
- 14 Power/End Key 
- 15 Keypad 
- 16 *Key 
- 17 # /Manner Key 
- 18 Microphone
- 19 Charger Terminals
- 20 Strap Eyelet
- 21 External Device Port
- 22 FeliCa Mark
- 23 External Display (Indicator display)
- 24 Charging Indicator/Illumination
- 25 Internal Antenna
- 26 Speaker
- 27 Macro Switch
- 28 Rear Camera

29 Memory Card Slot

30 Battery Cover

31 Volume up/Manner Key 

32 Volume down/Music Key  MUSIC

Tip

- TV antenna is built into handset. For optimal signal reception, do not cover Internal Antenna with hands or anything else. Do not put stickers over Internal Antenna.
- Key illustrations are simplified and differ in appearance from actual handset keys.

Basic Key Operations

In Standby

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Open S! Quick News List.
	Press and hold 	Increase earpiece volume.
		Open Phone Book Search menu.
	Press and hold 	Decrease earpiece volume.
		Open Received Calls window.
	Press and hold 	Open Received Address List.
		Open Redial window.
	Press and hold 	Open Sent Address List.
		Access Desktop Icons.
8		Open Mail menu.
	Press and hold 	Compose a new message.
9		Access Yahoo! Keitai portal.
	Press and hold 	Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.
10		Open Main Menu.
11		Activate function assigned to key.
	Press and hold 	Assign a function to key.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
13	Press and hold 	Delete notifications.
14	Press and hold 	Turn power on/off.
15	Press and hold 	Set/cancel IC Card Lock.
	Press and hold 	Dim Backlight.
	Press and hold 	Set Privacy Angle on/off.
	Press and hold 	Enter “+” (international access code).
17	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
31		Illuminate External Display (handset closed)
	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
32		Play Answering Machine. Illuminate External Display (handset closed)
	Press and hold 	Activate Music Player ¹ .

1 Music Player does not activate when battery charge is low.

During Voice Calls

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Open Phone Book Search Group menu.
	Press and hold 	Continuously increase earpiece volume.
		Open Phone Book Search Column menu.
	Press and hold 	Continuously decrease earpiece volume.
		Open Received Calls window.
		Open Redial window.
8		Turn handsfree on/off.
9		Toggle Hyper Clear Voice modes (High, OFF or Low).
10		Open Task Switch window.
13		Hold call.
14		End call.
	Press and hold 	Turn power off.
17	Press and hold 	Set/cancel Manner Mode.
31		Increase earpiece volume.
32		Decrease earpiece volume.
	Press and hold 	Record other party's voice

During Text Entry

No.	Key/Operations	Description
6		Insert line feed ↓ (when cursor is at the end of text).
		Add a space (when cursor is at the end of text).
8		Open pictograph/symbol lists.
	Press and hold 	Access My Pictograms (in S! Mail).
9		Toggle character entry modes (in 5-touch or T9 input mode). Toggle double-byte and single-byte characters (in 2-touch mode).
	Press and hold 	Toggle text input methods (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 input mode).
12		Cycle characters in reverse order (in 5-touch mode).
	Press and hold 	Undo last operation (conversion, pasting, cut, etc.) and return to the previous state.
13		Delete one character to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, a character to left is deleted.
	Press and hold 	Delete all text to right of cursor. When cursor is at end of text, delete all text.

No.	Key/Operations	Description
16		Enter dakuten (゛) or handakuten (゜) (in 5-touch, 2-touch or T9 input mode). Toggle case (in 5-touch or 2-touch mode). Toggle Shift, Caps Lock and lower case modes (when entering alphanumerics in T9 input mode).
	Press and hold 	Insert line feed ↓ .

Operating in Landscape View

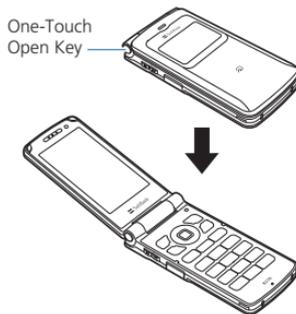
Multi Selector key assignments are the same in Landscape View.

One-Touch Open

Push One-Touch Open Key to open handset.

- Close handset by hand. If handset does not close properly, fully open then close handset.

1 Press One-Touch Open Key



Note

- Handset may open only partway depending on how handset is held.
- Handset may spring open. Be careful not to drop handset.

Tip

- Set handset opening operation to immediately answer an incoming call. Also quickly check other party for missed calls and message content of new messages (P. 13-25).

Display Indicators

① ② ③ ④ ⑤ ⑥ ⑦ ⑧ ⑨ ⑩ ⑪



⑫ ⑬ ⑭ ⑮ ⑯ ⑰ ⑱

- ① Battery Level
- ② Signal Strength
 - Out of Range
 - Emission OFF Mode
 - USIM Lock Active
- ③ Yahoo! Keitai Mode
 - Yahoo! Keitai Communication in Progress
 - Packet Transmission (No Data Transfer)
 - Connecting to Network for Packet Transmission
 - Packet Transmission (Sending/Receiving Data)
- ④ SSL Secured Site Connected
- ⑤ Unread Messages
 - Handset Message Memory Full
 - USIM SMS Memory Full (when there are unread messages)
 - Handset & USIM SMS Memory Full

- New Quake Alert
- ⑥ Pedometer ON
- ⑦ Dial Lock Active
 - Original Lock Active
 - Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
 - Original Lock Active in Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode
- ⑧ Software Updated
 - Side Key Guard On
 - IC Card Lock Active (when Side Key Guard is **ON**)
- ⑨ USB Cable Connected (Communication/microSD Mode)
 - microSD/MTP Mode
 - Handsfree Device Connected (Communication/microSD Mode)
 - USB Cable/Handsfree Device Connected (Communication/microSD Mode)
- ⑩ Infrared Transmission
- ⑪ Memory Card Inserted
 - Invalid Memory Card Inserted
 - Write-protect Memory Card Inserted
 - Memory Card Reader/Writer in Use
 - Accessing Memory Card
- ⑫ Vibration Set for Incoming Calls & Messages

- ⑬ No Ringtone for Incoming Calls & Messages
- ⑭ Manner Mode
- ⑮ Alarm Set
 - Alarm Set for Today (appears prior to set time.)
- ⑯ One Seg Timer Recording in Progress
- ⑰ New Messages at Voice Mail Center
 - Answering Machine On
 - New Voice Call
 - New Video Call
 - New Voice & Video Call
- ⑱ Backlight Off
 - Privacy Angle On (when Backlight is **Off**)

Tip

- To see indicator descriptions:
 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Display** ⇒  ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ **Icons** ⇒ 
- The following indicators appear when the menu design is **Basic Menu**.
 -  Voice Call
 -  Video Call
 -  Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
 -  Vibration Set for Incoming calls & Messages
 -  /  Vibration Set for Incoming Calls or Messages
 -  No Ringtone for Incoming Calls & Messages
 -  /  No Ringtone for Incoming Calls or Messages
 -  Keypad Lock Active (**After folded** or **Timer is ON**)

External Display (Indicator display)

Select from four patterns.

- See P. 13-8 for details on changing the pattern.

Digital 1



Digital 2



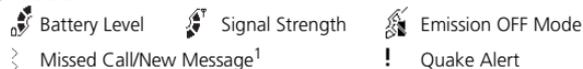
Digital 3



Digital 4

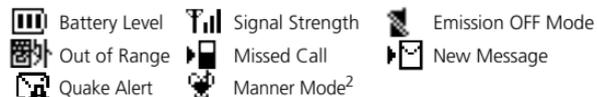


① Meters



! Quake Alert
1 One arrow indicates either missed call(s) or message(s); two arrows indicate missed call(s) and message(s).

② Indicators



Alarm Set/Alarm Set for Today (appears prior to set time)²

2 Appears for Clock 2

③ Cat Animation



④ Pedometer Step Count

Animation

Handset status and new information appear on External Display.

Examples



Tip

- External Display may be hard to see when outdoors or under strong light.

More Features

Customize

Style Mode Settings

- Set Display Design Collectively
- Check Default Style Mode Settings
- Edit Title of a Style
- Save Current Style Mode Settings as Favorite
- Change Each Item for Favorites
- Clear All Favorite Settings

▶ P. 13-3

Display Settings

- Wallpaper
- Show Calendar in Standby
- Slideshow
- Display Color Scheme
- Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Design
- Interface Language
- Guard from Prying Eyes
- Set Effect for Screen Change

▶ P. 13-3

Backlight

- Set Backlight & Power Saving
- Set Backlight Lighting Area
- Set Brightness of Backlight

▶ P. 13-5

Standby Indicators

- Enable Indicator Selector

▶ P. 13-8

External Display (Indicator display)

- Notifications/Animation
- Set Clock Pattern
- Set Messages to Appear
- Set Clock to Appear at Specified Time
- Set Display On/Off

(▶ P. 13-8)

Closed Illumination

- Set Flashing Color for Handset Close
- Set Flashing Pattern for Handset Close

(▶ P. 13-26)

Key Backlight

- Set Key Backlight Color

(▶ P. 13-26)

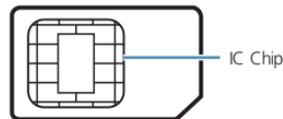
Before Using USIM Card

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card that contains customer information (phone number, etc.). A USIM Card must be inserted to use your handset.

- Store Phone Book entries and SMS on USIM Card.
- Insert USIM Card into other USIM-compatible SoftBank handsets to use information on Card.
- Do not apply excessive force when inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage caused by inserting USIM Card into other IC card readers/writers.
- USIM Card may become warm during use. This is not a malfunction.
- Keep IC chip clean.
- For details, refer to the manual supplied with your USIM Card.
- Do not drop USIM Card or subject to excessive shock. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Do not bend USIM Card or place heavy objects on it. Doing so may cause malfunction.
- Avoid extreme temperatures.
- Do not scratch, carelessly touch or short-circuit the IC chip. Doing so may result in data loss or malfunction.
- Clean USIM Card with a dry soft cloth (such as is used for eyeglasses).
- Use a SoftBank-designated USIM Card. Using a non-designated card may result in handset malfunction.

Other Notes on USIM Cards

- USIM Cards are the property of SoftBank.
- USIM Cards will be reissued for a fee if lost or damaged.
- Return USIM Cards to SoftBank upon cancellation or suspension of service.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications and performance may change without prior notice.
- Keep a separate copy of data saved on your USIM Card. SoftBank is not liable for lost data.
- If USIM Card or handset (with USIM Card inserted) is lost or stolen, suspend service immediately. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-53).
- Downloaded files (S! Appli, videos, Saved Pages, etc.) saved to handset or memory card may be inaccessible after USIM Card replacement, handset upgrade or service subscription cancellation. If a different USIM Card is inserted, the cookies and cache are cleared to protect personal information.



USIM PINs

There are two security codes for USIM Cards: PIN1 and PIN2.

PIN1

PIN1 is a four- to eight-digit code to prevent unauthorized handset use by a third party.

- Default PIN1 is 9999.
- PIN1 can be changed (P. 4-2).
- When *PIN1 code entry set* is set to *ON*, PIN1 must be entered each time handset is turned on to be used.

PIN2

PIN2 is required to reset total call cost or to set a maximum limit to call costs.

- Default PIN2 is 9999.
- PIN2 can be changed (P. 4-2).

PIN Lock & Cancellation (PUK)

If PIN1 or PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, PIN Lock is activated, limiting handset use to specific functions. Enter Personal Unblocking Key (PUK1/PUK2) to cancel PIN Lock.

- For information on PUK, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-53).

Note

- If PIN1 is incorrectly entered three times, and then PUK is incorrectly entered 10 times, USIM Card locks and handset cannot be used.
- If PIN2 is incorrectly entered three times, and then PUK is incorrectly entered 10 times, operations that require PIN2 will become unusable.
- Write down your PUK.
- To cancel USIM Card lock, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-53).

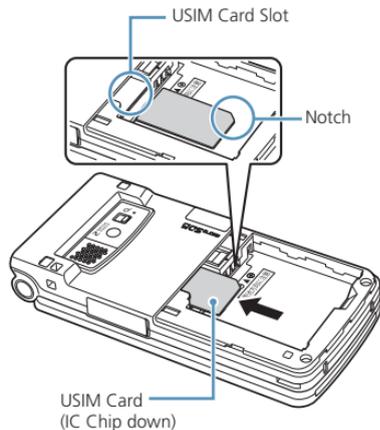
1

USIM Card Installation

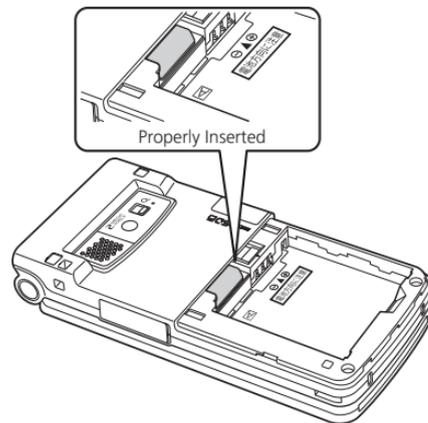
- Remove Battery (P. 1-16) before inserting or removing USIM Card. Do not press One-Touch Open Key while inserting/removing Card.

Insertion

1 Slide in USIM Card (IC chip facing down)



2 Push USIM Card in completely



Removal

1 Slide USIM Card out gently

Notes on Charging Battery

- Charge battery at least once every six months. If battery is left uncharged for a long period, it may become unusable or its operation time may decrease.
- Avoid connecting too many things to one AC outlet. Doing so may cause the AC outlet to overheat and cause a fire.
- Battery and AC Charger may become warm during charging, but this is not a malfunction. If they become too hot, however, stop charging and contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-53).
- If Charging Indicator flashes red during charging, battery may be faulty. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-53).
- Depending on the conditions of usage, the battery may expand as it nears the end of its life. However, this presents no safety problems.
- Check the battery type on its label:

Mark	Type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion battery Lithium-ion batteries are a recyclable resource. Do not dispose of them as municipal waste. Bring used batteries to your nearest SoftBank Shop or recycling center after insulating the terminals with tape. Observe local regulations on battery disposal.

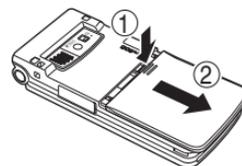


Battery Installation

- Do not press One-Touch Open Key when inserting or removing Battery.

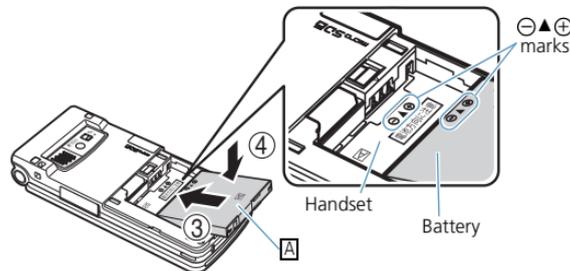
Insertion

1 Press and slide battery cover off

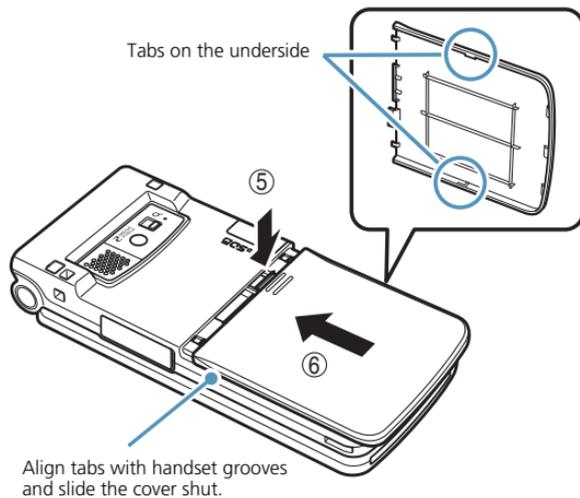


2 Insert Battery into place

Align $\ominus \blacktriangle \oplus$ marks on Battery and handset then slide Battery into place.



3 Replace cover



Note

- Do not force Battery Cover shut. Tab may be misaligned and cause breakage.

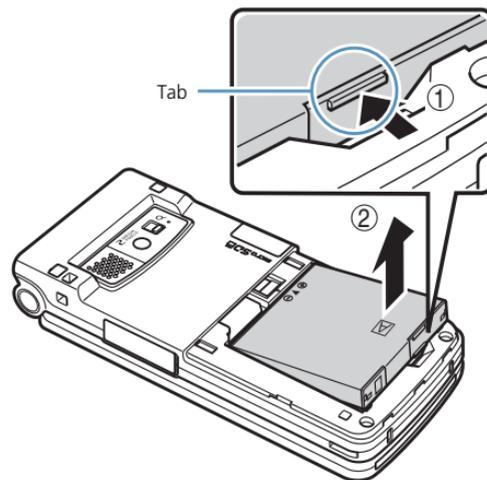
Removal

- Turn off handset before removing battery.

1 Remove Battery Cover

See Battery Installation (P. 1-15) for details.

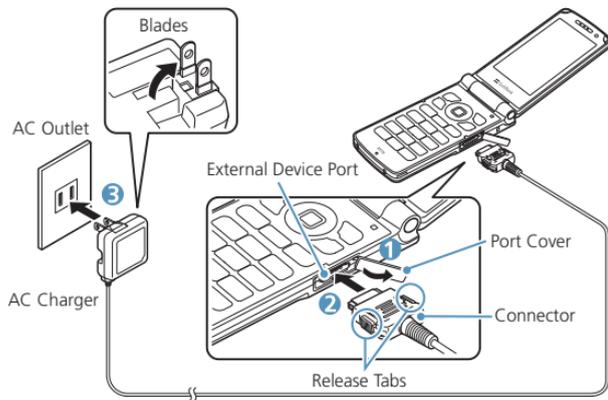
2 Press Tab (1) and lift out (2)



Charging Battery

Using AC Charger

Use only SoftBank-specified AC Charger (ZTDAA1, sold separately).



1 Open Port Cover

2 Insert Charger connector into External Device Port

3 Extend Charger blades and plug into an AC Outlet

Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.

4 Disconnect connector from handset

Press and hold Release Tabs to remove connector.

5 Unplug Charger from AC Outlet

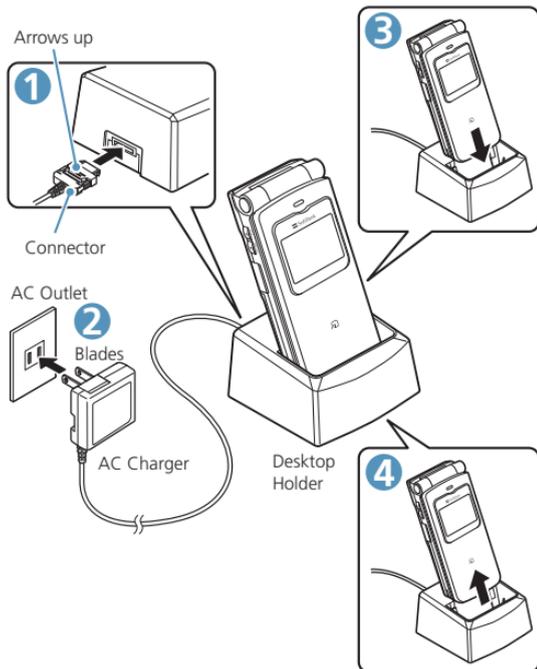
6 Close Port Cover

1

Getting Started

Using Desktop Holder

Desktop Holder is sold separately.



1 Insert Charger connector into Desktop Holder

2 Plug Charger into an AC Outlet

3 Place handset in Desktop Holder

Charging Indicator lights red while charging. When charging is complete, Indicator goes out.

4 Lift out

Note

- Battery can only be charged while inserted in handset.
- When both Charging Indicator and Display Indicator  go out and **Charge unusual Stop charge** appears, disconnect handset from AC Charger and remove battery. Set up handset and Charger and start charging again. If the same error occurs, AC Charger may be faulty or a non-specified charger is being used. Contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-53).

More Features

Customize

Backlight

- Set Backlight during Charging

[▶ P. 13-5](#)

Sounds

- Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones

[▶ P. 13-10](#)

Power On

- Make sure USIM Card is correctly inserted before turning power on.

1 Press and hold



Tip

- Power-on message (WELCOME) may appear on Display for a while when turning on handset immediately after turning power off or inserting battery.
- After USIM Card is replaced, Security Code is required when powering handset on for the first time. If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset shuts down. Turn handset on again.

Initial Setup

Setup prompt appears in Japanese the first time handset is turned on. Select **NO** and press  to exit.

Change interface language to English (P. 13-4) and restart handset to perform setup as follows.

1 [Initial Settings] window **YES**



▶ To Automatically Enter Date & Time
Auto    Select a time zone 



▶ To Manually Enter Date & Time
Manual (Date time set)   
Select a time zone    Enter
date and time  

2 Enter Security Code (9999)

 Enter new Security Code  

 **YES**  

3 Select a font size

Select **Separate setting** to customize font per window (P. 13-5).

4 [Keypad Sound Setting] window

 **ON or OFF**  

Tip

- Setup prompt no longer appears after setup is complete.
- The default Security Code is 9999.

Retrieving Network Information

When ,  or , is pressed after initial setup, a prompt appears. Select **YES** to update network settings.

Tip

- Retrieve network information to use network-related services, such as mail and the Internet.
- To manually update network settings:
  **Settings**    **Other settings** 
  **Connection Settings**  
Retrieve NW Info   **YES**  

Power Off

1 Press and hold

Handset shuts down.

More Features

Customize

Clock

- Hide Clock
- Clock Size
- Clock Color
- Time Zone (Sub Clock)
- Hide Sub Clock
- Summer Time (Sub Clock)
- Set Auto Time Adjustment
- Manually Adjust Time
- Summer Time

[▶ P. 13-2](#)

Auto Power On/Off

- Set Auto Power On/Off

[▶ P. 13-3](#)

Display Settings

- Set a Wake-up Image
- Set a Wake-up Message
- Set Font Type
- Set Font Thickness
- Set Font Sizes Collectively
- Set Font Size for Each Function Window

[▶ P. 13-3](#)

Sounds

- Set Key Sound Off

[▶ P. 13-10](#)

Resetting Handset

- Reset All Settings to Default
- Initialize Handset to Default Status

[▶ P. 13-26](#)

Use your handset responsibly. Inappropriate handset use can be both dangerous and bothersome. Take care not to disturb others when using your handset. Adjust handset use according to your surroundings.

- Turn handset power off in theaters, museums and other places where silence is the norm.
- Refrain from use in restaurants, lobbies, elevators, etc.
- Observe signs and instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Activating Manner Mode

Mute handset sounds.

1 Press and hold

Note

- When handset is set to vibrate for incoming calls, be careful as handset may slide off, slide into a stove, etc.
- The other party may hear a short beep if Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.

Tip

- Press and hold  again to cancel Manner Mode.
- Shutter click sounds even in Manner Mode.
- Press and hold  to set or cancel Manner Mode during a call. Short beeps sound through the earpiece when Manner Mode is set or canceled during a call.
- Set or cancel Manner Mode by pressing and holding .

More Features

Customize

Manner Mode

- Set Manner Mode Type
- Configure Original Manner Mode

[▶ P. 13-10](#)

Security Code, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use handset.

- Do not reveal these codes to others. Write down your codes.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damage due to handset misuse.

Security Code

Security Code, 9999 by default, is required to use some handset functions. The code can be changed.

- If Security Code is entered incorrectly or nothing is entered for 15 seconds, a tone sounds and a message appears. Enter correct Security Code.

Note

- The warning tone does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad sound* is set to *OFF*.

Changing Security Code

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Security** ⇒  ⇒ **Change security code** ⇒ 
- 2 Enter current Security Code ⇒ 
- 3 Enter new Security Code ⇒  ⇒ **YES** ⇒ 

Center Access Code

Center Access Code, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to access Optional Services via landlines or to subscribe to fee-based information.

Network Password

Network Password, a four-digit code assigned at initial subscription, is required to use Call Barring.

- If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed.

Checking Battery Level

Use Battery Level meters as a guide only.

Battery Level Indicator

Check the battery level at top of Display.

- Near full charge
- Sufficient charge
- Almost depleted; charge battery

Battery Level Beeper & Large Indicator

Check battery level by number of beeps and large indicator.

1 → **Settings** → → **Other settings** → → **Battery level** →

Battery Level indicator appears. Beeps sound according to the battery level.

Three beeps:

Near full charge

Two beeps:

Sufficient charge

One beep:

Almost depleted; charge battery

Note

- The battery level beeper does not sound in Manner Mode or when *Keypad sound* is set to *OFF*.

When Battery Is Empty

Recharge battery appears, the battery alarm sounds for about 10 seconds, and handset powers off in about 60 seconds. Charge battery.

My Phone Number

Check handset phone number.

1 → →

Account Details appear.

■ Add Other Information

→ → Enter Security Code → → Select an item → → Enter information → →

■ View All Information

→ → **Display all data** → → Enter Security Code → → to switch tabs

■ Reset Account Details

→ → **Reset** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** → .

Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable

Use Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable (sold separately) to connect earphones.

When sound source is monaural (calls, etc.), stereo earphones output monaural sound to left and right earphones; when sound source is stereo, only the left channel is output to monaural earphones.

Side Key Guard

Disable Side Keys (MUSIC and 77-) while handset is closed.

1  → Press and hold 

Repeat to cancel setting.

Tip

- Alternatively, set Side Key Guard by:

 → Settings →  → Other settings
→  → Side key guard →  → ON or
OFF → 

Basic Operations



Menu Operations	2-2	Advanced Features	2-23
Accessing Handset Functions.....	2-2	Main Menu	2-23
Icons/Notifications.....	2-3	Desktop Icons	2-23
Navigating through Menus	2-6	Text Entry	2-24
Multitask	2-8	Templates	2-25
Activating Another Function.....	2-8	Dictionaries.....	2-25
Toggling Functions.....	2-8	Phone Book	2-26
Text Entry	2-9		
Overview	2-9		
Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode.....	2-10		
Editing Text	2-12		
Editing Templates	2-13		
Using Dictionaries	2-13		
Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode.....	2-14		
Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode.....	2-14		
Phone Book	2-17		
Overview.....	2-17		
Creating Phone Book Entries.....	2-18		
Using Phone Book	2-19		
Phone Book Settings	2-20		

2



Accessing Handset Functions

- Descriptions in this guide are based on the default menu theme, **Big Character Menu**. If menu theme is changed, handset operations will differ from descriptions in this guide.

From Main Menu

Press **MENU** to open Main Menu. Use **UP** to select an item and press **ENTER** to open sub menus.



Main Menu

Tip

- Handset returns to Standby after 15 seconds of inactivity.

Using Softkeys & Multi Selector

Press Softkeys or use Multi Selector in Standby to access assigned functions.

Softkeys

- **[MAIL]**: Open Mail menu.
- **[Y]** (Press and hold): Open Yahoo! Keitai menu.
- **[F]**: Access the function assigned to the key.

Multi Selector

- **[S]**: Open S! Quick News List.
- **[P]**: Open Phone Book Search window.
- **[R]**: Open Received Calls window.
- **[C]**: Open Redial window.

Keyword Search

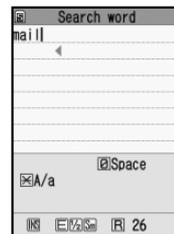
Enter keywords to search for menu items. Note that menu theme must be set to **Basic Menu** or **Original theme**.

- See P. 2-23 for details on changing menu theme.

1 **MENU** → **[F]**

2 Enter keyword → **[ENTER]**

<Example> Enter "mail"



Corresponding results appear.

3 Select an item → **[ENTER]**

Press **[Y]** to toggle results.

Tip

- If menu theme is changed, handset operations will differ from descriptions in this guide.



Menu Operations

From Original Menu

Assign often-used functions to Original Menu for quick access. Note that menu theme must be set to **Basic Menu** or **Original theme**.

- See P. 2-23 for details on changing menu theme.



Press to toggle between Main Menu and Original Menu.

Tip

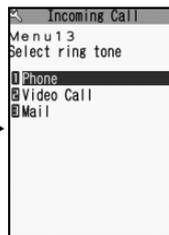
- If menu theme is changed, handset operations will differ from descriptions in this guide.

Enter Menu Item Number

Enter these numbers for direct menu access. Note that menu theme must be set to **Basic Menu** or **Original theme**.

- See P. 14-20 for menu item numbers.
- See P. 2-23 for details on changing menu theme.

<Example> Access **Select ring tone** (menu no. 13)



Tip

- If menu theme is changed, handset operations will differ from descriptions in this guide.

Icons/Notifications

Add functions to Icon window and use them as shortcuts. Notifications appear to inform you of missed calls, new messages, etc. Select a notification to check the information. The following shortcuts are set by default.

- TV
- Photo Mode
- Pedometer
- Loupe



Icons



Menu Operations

Icons

Icon	Function
	S! Quick News List
	Photo Mode
	TV
	Quick Search
	Call Phone Number
	Compose S! Mail
	Compose SMS
	Access Webpage (Yahoo! Keitai)
	Access Webpage (PC Site Browser)
	Play Melody

Icon	Function
	Show Image
	Play Video
	S! Appli
	Inbox Folder
	Movie Mode
	Voice Mode
	Schedule
	To Do List
	Text Memo
	Bar Code Reader

Icon	Function
	Text Reader
	Music Player
	Life History Viewer
	Calculator
	Dictionary
	Receive IR Transmission
	Original Menu
	PC Site Browser
	Pedometer
	Loupe



Notifications

Icon	Function/Information
Miss	Missed Calls
Msg	Answering Machine Play/delete messages.
Msg	Answering Machine (Video Message) Play/delete Video Messages.
VM	Voice Mail
New	New Messages
Miss	Missed Alarm
ALARM	Missed program
REC FINISH	Timer Recording Finished

Icon	Function/Information
MAX	Maximum Call Cost Limit Reached
UPDATE	Software Update
UPDATE	New S! Info Channel
Miss	S! Info Channel Reception Failure
New	New Weather Info.
Miss	Weather Info. Reception Failure
Get	View Content Keys

Notifications disappear after accessing the functions/information. Answering Machine and Voice Mail notifications disappear after message is played back.

Adding Icons

Add up to 15 icons.

- From a function → → **Add desktop icon** →

Accessing Icons & Notifications

-



Icon Window

- **Select an icon** →
 - **Scrolling Icons**
 -

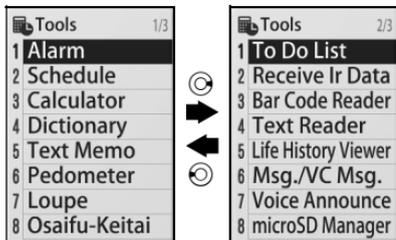


Menu Operations

Navigating through Menus

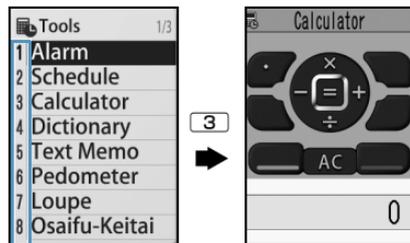
Scrolling Pages

Use or to scroll next/previous pages.



Selecting Menu Items Using Keypad

Use keypad to enter number corresponding to menu item.



Menu Numbers

Return to Previous Window or Standby

Press to cancel operation and return to previous window.

Press to return to Standby.

- May not apply to all functions/windows.

More Features

Advanced

Main Menu

- Change Menu Theme

P. 2-23

Desktop Icons

- Delete Notifications
- Edit Title of a Desktop Icon
- Change Icon Image
- Check Icon Information
- Change Order of Desktop Icons
- Delete Desktop Icons
- Reset Desktop Icons
- Change Theme of Desktop Icons
- Show/Hide Desktop Icons

P. 2-23

Customize

Display Settings

- Set Softkey Color

P. 13-3

Desktop Icons

- Set Desktop Theme
- Change Icon Design of a Theme
- Change Order of Icons of a Theme
- Copy Icons to Another Theme
- Move Icons to Another Theme
- Delete Icons of a Theme



- Set New Message Indicator in 3D

(▶ P. 13-6)

Menu Display Settings

- Set Menu Theme
- Change Icon Design (Original Theme)
- Change Background (Original Theme)
- Reset Original Theme Settings
- Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory
- Add a Menu Item to Original Menu
- Change Order of Original Menu Items
- Cancel Original Menu Items
- Reset Original Menu
- List View and Details View

(▶ P. 13-7)

Shortcut Key

- Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key

(▶ P. 13-25)



Activate one function per group at one time.

Function Group	Function
Mail Group	Mail
Yahoo! Keitai Group	Yahoo! Keitai
S! Appli Group	S! Appli
Settings Group	Settings, Optional Services
Tools Group	Data Folder, Tools, Phone Book, Own Data, Camera
TV & Music Group	TV, Music

- In **Big Character Menu**, function categorization differs. Therefore, some functions that are inaccessible simultaneously in other Menu settings may be accessed.
- See P. 14-2 for available combinations of functions that can be activated at the same time.
- Transmission fees are incurred while accessing functions during a voice call.

Activating Another Function

Activate another function without exiting current function.

1 While using a function ⇨

▶ To Activate Function from Main Menu

⇨ Select another function ⇨

▶ Mail Function



▶ To Access Yahoo! Keitai Portal

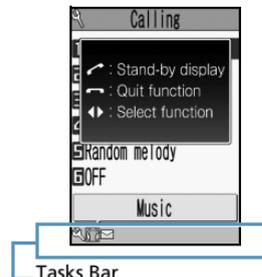


▶ To Activate Function Assigned to Shortcut Key



Toggling Functions

1 When multiple functions are active ⇨



Task Switch Window

To go to Standby, press .

Press to reopen Task Switch window.

2 ⇨ Select a task indicator ⇨

Tip

- To End Multitask:
[Task Switch] window ⇨ ⇨ Quit selected or Quit all function ⇨
- Alternatively, press and hold to end Multitask and return to Standby.



Text Entry

Handset has three text input methods:

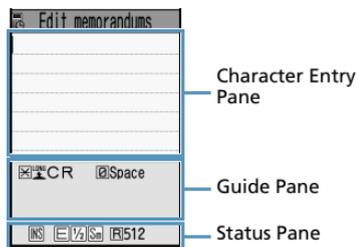
5-touch, 2-touch and T9 Input.

- This guide mainly explains Japanese text entry in 5-touch mode.

Overview

Text Entry Window

A text entry window consists of Character Entry Pane, Guide Pane and Status Pane. Indicator and key descriptions are as follows:



Text Entry Window

Character Entry Pane

	Cursor
◀	End mark (end of text)

Guide Pane

▲▼ CHG	⊙ to convert characters
▲▼ All	⊙ to search Phone Book
▲▼ Search	
◀▶	⊙ to specify a text range to copy/cut
▲▼ Area	
☒ LONG CR	Press and hold ☒ to insert line feed
☒ A/a	☒ to switch case of each character, or to add dakuten (゛/handakuten (ゝ))
☒ AA → aa	☒ to cancel Caps Lock mode
☒ aa → Aa	☒ to set Shift mode
☒ Aa → AA	☒ to set Caps Lock mode
↶ Back	↶ to cycle characters on a key in reverse order (e.g. え → う)
☒ Space	☒ to enter a space in alphanumeric entry mode for 5-touch mode

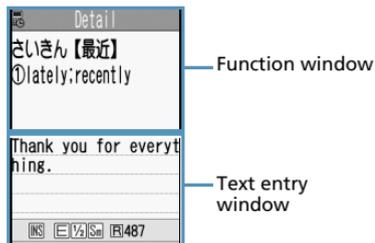
Status Pane

⊙	Text input method (2-touch/T9 Input mode) (No indicator for 5-touch mode)
INS DAR	Insert/Overwrite mode
漢 ㍻ ㍻ ㍻	Character entry mode
☒	Kuten code input mode (P. 2-25)
1/2 1/2	Double-byte/Single-byte mode
Sm	Lower case input mode
SHIFT CAPS LOCK	Shift/Caps Lock mode
R	Bytes remaining for text entry
In	Number of entered characters (appears when entering text to USIM Phone Book/SMS message)



Split Windows

In some instances, a second window opens with text entry window.



Referring to Dictionary from a text entry window

Switching Windows

Press and select *Change Window* to switch windows.

Changing Text Input Methods

- 1 [Text Entry] window **CHG input method** **Select a text input method** . Alternatively, press and hold .

Toggling Character Entry Modes

- 1 [Text Entry] window Press to toggle entry modes. Kanji/hiragana Katakana Alphanumeric Numbers

Tip

- In 2-touch mode, press to toggle single-byte and double-byte modes.

Interruptions during Text Entry

When Battery Runs Out

Battery alarm sounds and *Recharge Battery* appears. Text is automatically saved. Access the same function to continue text entry. Text may not be saved depending on the function.

When is Pressed

A message appears asking whether to end text entry. Select *YES* and press to end text entry without saving the text. To continue text entry, select *NO* and press .

When a Voice Call Arrives

Answer the call. After call ends, text entry window returns.

Entering Characters in 5-touch Mode

Press a key multiple times to cycle through letters assigned to that key. ● For key assignment, see P. 14-10.

Kanji, Hiragana & Katakana

Enter a reading (in hiragana) and convert to kanji, katakana, etc.

Using Word Prediction

Enter a character and Word Prediction suggests words starting with that character. Word Prediction also suggests word selection for words to follow. Switch to kanji/hiragana mode to use Word Prediction.



Text Entry

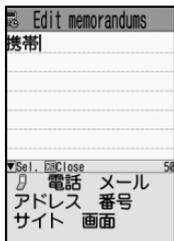
<Example> Entering “携帯電話”

- 1 [Text Entry] window → 2 (four times)

“け” is entered in Character Entry Pane.
Suggestion list shows predictions for words beginning with “け” in Guide Pane.



- 2 → Select “携帯” →



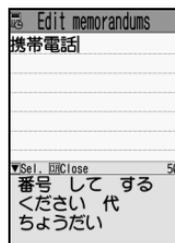
“携帯” appears in Character Entry Pane.
A suggestion list of words that follow “携帯” appears in Guide Pane.

■ When Required Word Does Not Appear



Continue hiragana (reading) entry in Character Entry Pane to narrow down selection.

- 3 → Select “電話” →



■ To Exit Suggestion List



Tip

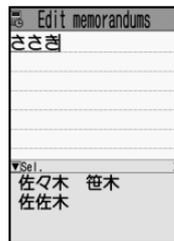
- Handset has a learning feature that adds entered words to the suggestion list. Press and hold CLEAR to delete an added word from the suggestion list.

Converting Hiragana

If the required suggestion does not appear or word prediction is set to off, convert to Kanji as shown below:

<Example> Entering “佐々木”

- 1 [Text Entry] window → 3 (once) → → 3 (once) → 2 (twice)



- 2 F12

■ To Determine Entered Hiragana without Converting It



- 3 Select a word →

■ To Change Conversion Range





Dakuten (`) & Handakuten (ˆ)

<Example> Entering “が”

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [2] (once)
⇨ * ⇨ ●

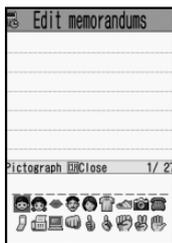
Switching to Lower Case

<Example> Change “つ” to “つ”

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [4] (three times)
⇨ * ⇨ ●

Pictographs & Symbols

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ ☒



- 2 Select a pictograph/symbol ⇨ ●
Press ☒ or ☒ to toggle pictograph/symbol categories.

To Toggle Full-Screen List and Continuous Entry

⇨ [P]

- 3 [CLEAR]

The pictograph/symbol list window is closed.

Emoticons

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [P] ⇨
Face Mark ⇨ ●

- 2 Select an emoticon ⇨ ●

Common Phrases (Templates)

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [P] ⇨
Common phrases ⇨ ●

- 2 Select a folder ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a phrase ⇨ ● (twice)

Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana

Enter alphanumerics, numbers or katakana in kanji/hiragana input mode.

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ Enter hiragana ⇨ ☒ ⇨ Select a character ⇨ ●

Editing Text

Deletion & Correction

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ Move cursor to the left of the character to delete ⇨ [CLEAR]

To Delete All Characters to the Right of Cursor

⇨ Press and hold [CLEAR]

To Delete Entire Text

⇨ Move cursor to the end of text ⇨ Press and hold [CLEAR]

- 2 Position cursor ⇨ Enter correct characters

Copy, Cut & Paste

- Only one entry can be stored on clipboard. If you copy or cut new text, the previously copied or cut text is overwritten.
- Copied or cut text can be pasted repeatedly until you copy or cut new text, or turn handset power off.

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇨ [P] ⇨
Copy or Cut ⇨ ●

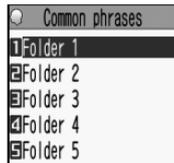


Text Entry

- 2 Move cursor to beginning of characters → ●
- 3 Move cursor to end of characters → ●
- 4 Position cursor →  → **Paste** → ●

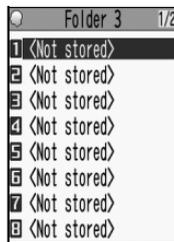
Editing Templates

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Input Support** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Common Phrases** ⇒ ●



Templates (Common phrases) Window

- 2 Select a folder → ●



Templates List

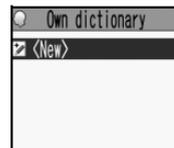
- 3 Select an entry →  ⇒ Enter text → ●

Using Dictionaries

Saving Words to Own Dictionary

Save frequently used words to Own Dictionary. For each word, save a reading (in hiragana). When the reading is entered in a text entry window, the word appears among the suggestions.

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Input Support** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Own Dictionary** ⇒ ●



Own Dictionary Window

- 2 **<New>** ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter word ⇒ ●
⇒ Enter reading ⇒ ●

Tip

- To check saved words:
Select a word ⇒ ●



Using Downloaded Dictionaries

Download dictionaries from Yahoo! Keitai sites. Dictionary must be enabled in advance.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Input Support** ⇒ ⇒ **DL Dictionary** ⇒



Downloaded Dictionary Window

- 2 Select a dictionary ⇒
 - ★ appears next to the enabled dictionary.

Tip

- To disable a dictionary: [Downloaded Dictionary] window ⇒ Select a dictionary with ★ ⇒
- If an emoticon dictionary is enabled, its content is reflected in the emoticon list when entering emoticons.

Entering Characters in 2-touch Mode

Each hiragana character is entered by combining two key presses.

- For combinations of character input keys, see P. 14-11.
- Procedures for selecting predicted words and for converting entered hiragana are the same as those used in 5-touch mode (P. 2-10).

<Example> Entering “キャンブ”

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇒ (き) ⇒ (change to lower case mode) ⇒ (ゃ) ⇒ (change to upper case mode) ⇒ (ん) ⇒ (ふ) ⇒ (°)

- 2 ⇒

Tip

- Pressing also adds dakuten (°) and handakuten (°) or toggles upper case and lower case.
- Press to toggle double-byte and single-byte modes.

Entering Characters in T9 Input Mode

Press a key once for each character, and select the word from the suggestion list.

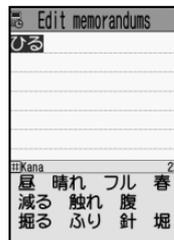
- For key assignment, see P. 14-12.
- When character entry mode is “Number,” 5-touch input method is automatically applied.

<Example> Entering “春”

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇒ ⇒

Word predictions for the key combination appear.



■ To Change Conversion Range



■ Toggle Kanji and Hiragana Suggestion Lists





Text Entry

■ Toggle English and Japanese Suggestion Lists



2 ⇄

Select word from among the suggestions in Guide Pane.

■ To Show Converted Words on Suggestion List



For example, if you specify “はる,” then “張る,” “貼る” and other words that have the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ To Show Predicted Words on Suggestion List



For example, if you specify “はる,” then “春休み,” “運か” and other words that begin with the same reading appear on the suggestion list.

■ To Exit Suggestion List and Continue Character Entry



3

Re-entering Words

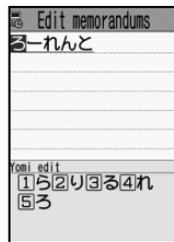
Re-enter as shown below if the desired word does not appear.

<Example> Entering “らんらんと”

- The following example is in Japanese text entry mode.

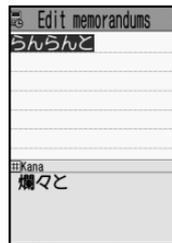
- 1 [Text Entry] window ⇄  (row ら) ⇄  (row わ) ⇄  (row ら) ⇄  (row わ) ⇄  (row た)
“らんらんと” does not appear in suggestion list.

2



Cursor is on the first character of the word. The edit window opens in Guide Pane, where hiragana characters of row “ら” appear.

- 3  (ら) ⇄  (ん) ⇄  (ら) ⇄  (ん) ⇄  (と)



■ If No Correction is Necessary

- ⇄  to move cursor to the next character

■ To End Re-entering a Word



The words predicted/converted from the re-entered word appear on the suggestion list.

4



More Features

Advanced

Text Entry

- Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case
- Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte
- Cycle Characters in Reverse Order
- Undo Last Operation
- Move Cursor to Top/End of Text
- Overwrite & Insert Modes
- Insert Line Feed
- Input a Space
- Use Dictionary
- Quote Text
- Use Kuten Codes

(▶ P. 2-24)

Templates

- Edit a Folder Name
- Reset a Folder Name
- Edit Templates
- Reset Templates

(▶ P. 2-25)

Dictionaries

- Edit Entries
- Delete Entries
- Edit Title
- View Information
- Delete Dictionaries

(▶ P. 2-25)

Customize

Text Entry

- Set Text Input Method
- Set Word Prediction
- Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana
- Clear Learning History
- Change Font Size

(▶ P. 13-25)



Overview

Save phone numbers, e-mail addresses and other contact information to Phone Book.

Contacts & Settings

Entry Items

- Name & Reading
- Group
- 4 Phone Numbers
- 3 E-mail Addresses
- Address
- Birthday
- Memo
- Still Image
- Entry Number

Custom Settings

- Incoming Ringtone
- Incoming Image
- Illumination
- Vibration
- Outgoing Message

Others

- Secret Data



Handy Functions

Speed Dial

Abbreviated dialing for numbers in Phone Book (P. 3-12).

Tomo-Den

Save frequently accessed Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den (P. 3-12).

Reject Calls

Reject calls from phone numbers not saved in Phone Book (P. 4-5).

● Back Up Important Information

Keep a separate copy of Phone Book entry information. When battery is exhausted or removed for extended periods, Phone Book data may be lost or altered. Damage to handset may also affect data recovery. SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost/altered Phone Book data.



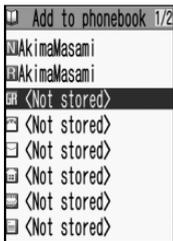
Creating Phone Book Entries

<Example> Enter a name, phone number, e-mail address and specify a group

1 → **Phone** → → **Add to phonebook** → → **Phone** →

2 Enter name → → Check reading →

Reading is entered automatically. Edit as necessary.



Phone Book Entry Window

3 → → Select a group →

4 → → Enter phone number → → Select an icon →

To save additional numbers, select <Not stored> and repeat the same step.

5 → → Enter e-mail address → → Select an icon →

To save additional addresses, select <Not stored> and repeat the same step.

6

Setting Incoming Image

1 [Phone Book Entry] window → →

▶ To Capture an Image with Camera **Photo mode** → → Capture image →

▶ To Select an Image in Data Folder **Select image** → → Select a folder → → Select a still image →

Tip

- To cancel selected image, select *Release This* and press .

Creating Entries from Other Functions

Create entries from:

- Received calls
- Dialed Calls
- Redial
- Text Reader
- Bar Code Reader
- Receives/Sent Address List
- Yahoo! Keitai
- Phone Number Entry window

<Example> Create an entry from Received Calls

1 → Select a record → → **Phone** →

▶ To Save As a New Entry **New** →

▶ To Add Another Entry **Add** → → Search Phone Book → Select an entry → (twice) Phone Book Entry window with the phone number automatically entered opens.

2 Enter other items → (→ YES →



Phone Book

2

Basic Operations

Search all:

Phone Book is organized by tabs (Japanese syllabary order).



Phone Book Entry List

Tip

- Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card are indicated by

Accessing Entries from Other Functions

Access Phone Book entries from Received Calls, Dialed Calls, Redial and Received/Sent Address List.

Access Entries from Received Calls

- 1 ⇒ ⇒ **Look-up phonebook** ⇒

Access Entries from Dialed Calls

- 1 ⇒ **Phone** ⇒ ⇒ **Dialed Calls** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ **Look-up phonebook** ⇒

Access Entries from Redial

- 1 ⇒ ⇒ **Look-up phonebook** ⇒

Access Entries from Received Address List

- 1 Press and hold ⇒ ⇒ **Look-up phonebook** ⇒

Access Entries from Sent Address List

- 1 Press and hold ⇒ ⇒ **Look-up phonebook** ⇒

Phone Book Settings

Customizing Handset Response

Set different ringtones, images, etc. per entry item or Group.

Indicators

The following indicators appear for set items.



- Ringtone (Incoming Calls)
- Ringtone (Mail)
- Illumination (Incoming Calls)
- Illumination (Mail)
- Vibrator (Incoming Calls)
- Vibrator (Mail)
- Incoming Image (Calls)
- Outgoing Message (Incoming Calls)



To Customize by Phone Number/E-mail Address

<Example> Set a ringtone for incoming voice calls

- 1 [Entry Details] ⇨ ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ⇨ **Ring tonellimage** ⇨
- 2 **Voice call (recv.)** ⇨
- 3 **Ring tone** ⇨ ⇨ Select a ringtone type ⇨ (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ Select a ringtone ⇨

To Customize by Group

<Example> Set illumination for incoming messages

- 1 [Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ ⇨ **Group setting** ⇨
- 2 Select a group ⇨ ⇨ **Ring tonellimage** ⇨
- 3 **Mail (recv.)** ⇨
- 4 **Illumination** ⇨ ⇨ Select a pattern ⇨

Note

- Custom Settings are unavailable for secret Phone Book entries.
- Custom Settings are canceled when entry is set as secret.

Tip

- To cancel Custom Settings, select an item with ★ and press .

Restricting Calls to/from Specific Phone Numbers

Restrict calls to/from specific numbers in Phone Book. This can help manage personal calls and prevent nuisance calls.

- 1 [Entry Details] ⇨ ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ ⇨ **Restrictions** ⇨
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇨
- 3 Select a restriction type ⇨

Restrict dialing:
Permit outgoing calls to only one number. Note that the number can only be dialed from Phone Book.

Call rejection:

Restrict incoming calls from a specified number.

Call acceptance:

Receive incoming calls only from a specified number.

Tip

- ★ indicates currently set restriction; to cancel, select the setting and press .

When *Restrict dialing* is Set

The following operations are disabled:

- Dialing by Keypad
- Dialing from Received Calls
- Calling from Phone Book (except: calling specified number in Phone Book)

Tip

- When *Restrict dialing* is set, all records on Redial, Dialed Calls and Sent Address List are deleted.
- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Restrict dialing* is set.
- If you change or delete the specified number, the set restriction is canceled. Cancel *Restrict dialing* to edit or delete.



Setting Secret Entries

Prevent others from accessing certain Phone Book entries.

- Phone Book entries set as secret only appear in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode (P. 4-6).

1 [Entry Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Set secret** ⇨ ●

Tip

- To cancel Secret Setting: [Entry Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Release secret** ⇨ ●
- Entries saved while Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is active are saved as secret entries.
- When a Tomo-Den entry is set as a secret entry, the entry's Tomo-Den setting is canceled.

Managing USIM Phone Book

Phone Book entries can be copied between handset and USIM Card.

1 ⇨ **Tools** ⇨ ● ⇨ **USIM Operation** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Enter Security Code** ⇨ ●

2 **Copy** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Phone** → **USIM** or **USIM** → **Phone** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Phonebook** ⇨ ●

3 **Search Phone Book**

4 **Select an entry** ⇨ ●
Repeat this step to specify other entries.

5 ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Note

- Items that cannot be saved to USIM Phone Book are not copied.
- Phone Book entries set as secret cannot be copied.
- You must end copying of Phone Book entries to make/receive calls or send/receive messages.

More Features

Advanced

Creating Entries

- Save a Postal Code, Address & Memo
- Save Birthday
- Change Entry Number

▶ P. 2-26

Phone Book Search

- Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List
 - Change Font Size
 - Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order
 - Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book
 - Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book
- ▶ P. 2-26

Managing Phone Book

- Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item
- Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type
- Check Number of Phone Book Entries
- Edit a Phone Book Entry
- Copy a Phone Book Entry
- Delete Entries
- Delete Items from an Entry
- Delete an Entry from USIM Card

▶ P. 2-27

Customize

Phone Book

- Set Preferred Search Method
- Change Group Name

▶ P. 13-12



Main Menu

Change Menu Theme

→ → Select a pattern → ● (→ YES or NO → ●)

Select from four menu themes: **Big Character Menu**, **Basic Menu**, **Simple Menu**, and **Original theme**. However, if menu theme is changed, handset operations will differ from descriptions in this guide.

Desktop Icons

Delete Notifications

● → Press and hold

Some notifications may not disappear depending on the type.

Edit Title of a Desktop Icon

● → Select an icon → → **Edit Title** →

● → Enter title → ●

Change Icon Image

● → Select an icon → → **CHG icon image** → ● → **Select icon image** → ● → Select a folder → ● → Select a file → ●
 To reset icon image, select **Default icon image** and press ●.

Check Icon Information

● → Select an icon → → **Icon info setting** → ●

Change Order of Desktop Icons

● → Select an icon → → **Sort** → ● → YES → ● → → Select a position → ●

Delete Desktop Icons

● → Select an icon → → **Delete** → ●

- To Select **Delete this**
→ **Delete this** → ● → YES → ●
- To Select **Delete selected**
→ **Delete selected** → ● → Select icons → ● → → YES → ●
- To Select **Delete all**
→ **Delete all** → ● → YES → ●

Reset Desktop Icons

● → → **Reset desktop** → ● → YES → ●

Change Theme of Desktop Icons

● → → **Change desktop** → ● → Select a theme → ● → YES → ●

Show/Hide Desktop Icons

● → → **Display setting** → ● → **Display always** or **Display at use** → ● (→ ●)

When **Display at use** is set, Desktop Icons only appear when you press ● in Standby.



Text Entry

Start Here

[Text Entry] window P. 2-9

Functions Before Entering Text

Switch between Lower Case & Upper Case

[Text Entry] window → → **Lower case** or **Upper case** → ●

Switch between Single-byte & Double-byte

[Text Entry] window → → **Single-byte** or **Double-byte** → ●

Functions While Entering Text

Cycle Characters in Reverse Order

[Text Entry] window → Input a character →

This procedure is available in 5-touch mode.

Undo Last Operation

[Text Entry] window → Press and hold

Move Cursor to Top/End of Text

[Text Entry] window → → **Jump** → ●
→ **To beginning** or **To end** → ●

Overwrite & Insert Modes

[Text Entry] window → → **Overwrite** or **Insert** → ●

Text entry windows always open in **Insert** mode.

Insert Line Feed

[Text Entry] window → Press and hold
 Press to add a space at the end of text.

Input a Space

[Text Entry] window → → **Space** → ●
 Press to add a space at the end of text.

Use Dictionary

[Text Entry] window → → **Refer dic.** → ●

- To Enter a Word
 - **Enter word** → ● → Enter word → ●
 - Select a dictionary → ● → Select a word → ●
 - ● → Read descriptions of the word
- To Select Area
 - **Select area** → ● → Move cursor to beginning of word → ● → Move cursor to end of word → ● → Select a dictionary → ● → Select a word → ● → Read descriptions of the word
- To Enter a Word from Search History
 - **Reference history** → ● → Select a word → ● → Select a dictionary → ● → Select a word → ● → Read descriptions of the word



Quote Text

[Text Entry] window → → **Quote data** → ●

- To Quote from a Phone Book Entry
→ **Quote phonebook** → ● → Search Phone Book → Select a data item to quote text from → ● →
- To Quote from Account Details
→ **Account Details** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → Select a data item → ● →
- To Scan Text by Text Reader
→ **Text reader** → ● → Scan text with camera →
- To Scan Bar Code by Bar Code Reader
→ **Bar code reader** → ● → Scan a bar code with camera → ●

Use Kuten Codes

[Text Entry] window → → **Kuten code** → ● → Enter kuten codes (P. 14-13)

Templates

Start Here

[Templates (Common phrases)] window P. 2-13
 [Templates List] P. 2-13

Edit a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)] window →
 Select a folder → → **Edit folder name**
 → ● → Enter folder name → ●

Reset a Folder Name

[Templates (Common phrases)] window →
 Select a folder → → **Reset name** → ●
 → **YES** → ●

Edit Templates

[Templates List] → Select a template →
 → **Edit** → ● → Edit phrase → ●

Reset Templates

[Templates List] → Select a template →

- To Select **Delete this**
→ **Delete this** → ● → **YES** → ●
 - To Select **Delete all**
→ **Delete all** → ● → Enter Security Code
→ ● → **YES** → ●
- User entries are deleted, and preinstalled templates return to default.

Dictionaries

Start Here

[Own Dictionary] window P. 2-13
 [Downloaded Dictionary] window P. 2-14

Own Dictionary

Edit Entries

[Own Dictionary] window → Select an entry → → Edit word → ● → Edit reading → ●



Delete Entries

[Own Dictionary] window → Select an entry → → **Delete** → ●

● To Select *Delete this*
→ *Delete this* → ● → **YES** → ●

● To Select *Delete selected*
→ *Delete selected* → ● → Select entries
→ ● → → **YES** → ●

● To Select *Delete all*
→ *Delete all* → ● → Enter Security Code
→ ● → **YES** → ●

Downloaded Dictionaries

Edit Title

[Downloaded Dictionary] window →
Select a dictionary → → **Edit title** → ●
→ Edit title → ●

View Information

[Downloaded Dictionary] window →
Select a dictionary → → **Dictionary info**
→ ●

Delete Dictionaries

[Downloaded Dictionary] window →
Select a dictionary →

● To Select *Delete this*
→ *Delete this* → ● → **YES** → ●

● To Select *Delete all*
→ *Delete all* → ● → Enter Security Code →
● → **YES** → ●

Phone Book

Start Here

[Phone Book Entry] window P. 2-18

[Phone Book Entry List] P. 2-19

[Entry Details] P. 2-19

Creating Entries

Save a Postal Code, Address & Memo

[Phone Book Entry] window → or
→ ● → Enter content → ●

Save Birthday

[Phone Book Entry] window → → ●
→ Enter date of birth → ●

Change Entry Number

[Phone Book Entry] window → → ●
→ Change entry number → ●

Phone Book Search

Change Index Tab of Phone Book Entry List

[Phone Book Entry List] → → **Change Display** → ● → **Alphabet, Memory No. or Group** → ●

Change Font Size

[Phone Book Entry List] / [Entry Details] →
 → **Standard font, Big font** → ●

Change Phone Number/E-mail Address Order

[Entry Details] → Select a phone number/e-mail address → → **Move to top** → ●

This procedure is available when more than one phone number/e-mail address is saved to a Phone Book entry.



Compose an S! Mail from Phone Book

[Entry Details] ⇨ ☺ ⇨ Select an e-mail address ⇨ ● ⇨ Compose S! Mail

Compose an SMS Message from Phone Book

[Entry Details] ⇨ ☺ ⇨ Select a phone number ⇨ /P ⇨ **Compose SMS** ⇨ ● ⇨ Compose SMS message

Managing Phone Book

Check Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ /P ⇨ **Ring tone/image** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item with ★ ⇨ ●

👉 Select another item with ★ to view that setting.

Cancel Custom Ringtone/Image Settings by Item

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ /P ⇨ **Ring tone/image** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item with ★ ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item with ★ ⇨ /P ⇨ **Release settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

👉 When the same ringtone/image is set for multiple entries, canceling the setting for one entry cancels setting for all entries.

Check Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ /P ⇨ **Restrictions** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a restriction type with ★ ⇨ /P ⇨ **Check settings** ⇨ ●

Cancel Restriction Settings by Restriction Type

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ /P ⇨ **Restrictions** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a restriction type with ★ ⇨ /P ⇨ **Release settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Check Number of Phone Book Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ /P ⇨ **No. of phonbook** ⇨ ●

Edit a Phone Book Entry

[Entry Details] ⇨ /P ⇨ **Edit phonebook** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit each item ⇨ ☺ ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
👉 Select **W** and edit the entry number. The edited entry is saved as a new entry and the original entry remains as before.

Copy a Phone Book Entry

[Entry Details] ⇨ /P ⇨ **Copy to USIM** or **Copy from USIM** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Delete Entries

[Phone Book Entry List] ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ /P ⇨ **Delete data** ⇨ ●

- To Select **Delete this**
⇨ **Delete this** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- To Select **Delete selected**
⇨ **Delete selected** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select entries
⇨ ● ⇨ ☺ ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- To Select **Delete all**
⇨ **Delete all** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code
⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●



Delete Items from an Entry

[Entry Details] → → Select an item → → Delete data → ● → Delete phone No., Delete mail add., Delete address, Delete birthday, Delete memorandums or Delete image → ● → YES → ●

Delete an Entry from USIM Card

→ Tools → ● → USIM Operation → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → Delete → ● → USIM → ● → Phonebook → ● → Search Phone Book → Select an entry → ● → → YES → ●

Calling



Overview	3-2	Advanced Features	3-16
Voice Call	3-3	Outgoing Call Functions	3-16
Making Voice Calls	3-3	International Calls	3-16
International Calls	3-3	Handling Incoming Calls	3-16
Answering Voice Calls	3-4	Engaged Call Operations	3-17
Recording the Other Party's Voice	3-4	Answering Machine	3-18
Answering Machine	3-4	Call Logs	3-18
Playing Messages.....	3-5	Speed Dial	3-18
Video Call	3-7	Optional Services.....	3-19
Video Call Window	3-7		
Making Video Calls	3-7		
Answering Video Calls	3-8		
Call Logs	3-10		
Dialing from Call Logs.....	3-10		
Call Time & Cost	3-11		
Speed Dialing	3-12		
Speed Dial	3-12		
Tomo-Den	3-12		
Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming) ..	3-13		
Calling Japan and Other Countries	3-13		
Calling within the Same Country	3-13		
Optional Services	3-14		
Overview	3-14		

3



Overview

Voice call and video call are available on handset.

Voice Call

Make Calls to:




SoftBank Handsets Non-SoftBank Mobile Phones



Landlines

Video Call

Make Calls to:





SoftBank Handsets Non-SoftBank Mobile Phones Landlines

Other party must use a video call compatible phone



International Call

Calling Abroad from Japan

Make/receive voice and video calls.

- International phone service available without separate application.

Global Roaming

Using Handset Abroad

Handset is Global Roaming Service eligible. (Prior application may be required.)

- For details, see: http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/global_roaming/ or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-53).

Emergency Calls

Your location is automatically reported to the corresponding agency (police, etc.) when you place emergency calls (110, 119 or 118) with Softbank 3G handsets.

(Emergency Location Report)

- Registration and transmission fees do not apply.
- Positioning accuracy is affected by location and signal conditions. Always provide your location and purpose on the phone.
- Location Information is not reported when emergency calls are placed without Caller ID (such as when the number is prefixed with 184). However, the corresponding agency may obtain your Location Information in a life threatening situation.
- Not available during international roaming.

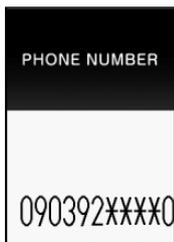
Emergency calls are possible even while some handset restrictions are active.

- Restrict Dialing (P. 2-21)
- Keypad Lock (P. 4-4)
- Set Max Cost Limit (P. 13-13)
- Emission OFF Mode (P. 4-5)
- PIN1 Code Entry Set (P. 4-2)



Making Voice Calls

1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

■ Correcting Misentries

→ to scroll cursor → to delete (press and hold to delete all numbers to the left) → Reenter number(s)

■ Deleting Phone Number

→

2



Voice Call Window

3 to end call

Note

- The other party may hear a short beep when to , or are pressed during a call.

Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- When you hear a busy tone, the other party is on another line.
- When you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached, the other party's mobile phone is off or is out of signal range.
- When you hear a message asking for your caller ID, call again with your number revealed.

- After Display backlight turns off during a call, if no keys are pressed for about two minutes, Display goes off and handset enters power saving mode regardless of Lighting setting for Backlight (P. 13-5). Handset can be operated in power saving mode in the same way as when Display is lit.
- Call ends or is placed on hold when handset is closed. Connect stereo earphone-microphone to talk with handset closed.

Available Keys during Voice Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	Press and hold
	or
Hold Call	

International Calls

Application not required.

1 Enter phone number → → **Int'l call** →

2 Select a country code → → Select an international prefix number → →

3 to end call



Answering Voice Calls

- 1 When a call arrives →
- 2 to end call

Recording the Other Party's Voice

- For details on playing/deleting recordings, see P. 3-5 and P. 3-18.
- 1 Press and hold during a call
A short beep sounds through the earpiece and recording starts. When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound.
To stop recording, press or press and hold .

Answering Machine

Record caller's messages on handset when you are unable to answer voice or video calls.

Setting Answering Machine

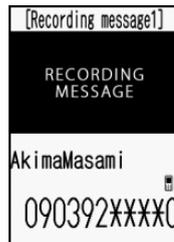
- 1 → Phone → → **Answering Machine** → → **Answering Machine** →
- 2 **ON** → → Select an outgoing message →
- 3 Enter ring time

Tip

- When Voice Mail or Call Forward is activated, set a shorter ring time for Answering Machine than that for Voice Mail or Call Forward.
- Answering Machine is unavailable when power is off, in a place with no signal reception, or in Emission OFF Mode. Use Voice Mail instead (see P. 3-14).

When a Call Arrives

Answering Machine activates after the set ring time. Outgoing message plays, and the caller's voice/video message is recorded. After the message is recorded, handset returns to Standby and Desktop Icons appear.



- To Answer Call during Recording →

Activate When Call Arrives

Activate Answering Machine when unable to answer an incoming call. Answering Machine setting returns, after message is recorded.

- 1 When a call arrives → Answering Machine is activated and starts recording.



Note

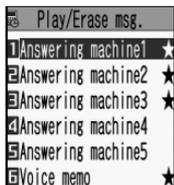
- Answering Machine cannot be activated when memory is full.

Tip

- Alternatively, press **#** when a call arrives. When answering with **#**, handset enters Manner Mode.

Playing Messages

- 1** **Select notification** or



Play/Delete Voice Message Window
Items with a message recorded are indicated by ★.

- 2** **Select a message**

Tip

- To delete a message while playing it: **Erase** **YES**

Available Keys during Playback

Play Next Message	
Stop	or CLEAR
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	

Tip

- Alternatively, press in Standby to play recorded voice messages/voice memos.
- To play voice messages from Main Menu: **Phone** **Answering Machine** **Play/Erase Msg.**

Available Keys during Video Message Playback

Play Previous/Next Message	
Adjust Volume	
	7+ or
Pause/Play	
Stop	CLEAR
Return a Voice Call	
Return a Video Call	

Tip

- To play video messages from Main Menu: **Phone** **Answering Machine** **Play/Erase VC Msg.**



More Features

Advanced

Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Adjust Earpiece Volume Beforehand
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers) **(▶ P. 3-16)**

International Calls

- Enter “+” to Call Abroad **(▶ P. 3-16)**

Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls
- Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center **(▶ P. 3-16)**

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)
- Send Touch Tones **(▶ P. 3-17)**

Answering Machine

- Delete Recorded Messages **(▶ P. 3-18)**

Customize

Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers

- Save Touch Tones
- Set Numbers after “*” as Sub Address **(▶ P. 13-12)**

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image
- Set Image or Video for Incoming Call/Message **(▶ P. 13-3)**

International Calls

- Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with “+”
- Change a Country Code
- Save an International Access Code **(▶ P. 13-12)**

Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls **(▶ P. 13-8)**

Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key **(▶ P. 13-9)**

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Clarity of Other Party Voice
- Change Color of Illumination While Calling
- Set a Hold Message
- Set Closing Sound Off
- End Call By Closing Handset **(▶ P. 13-13)**

Sounds

- Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message
- Play Recorded Sound
- Delete Recorded Sound **(▶ P. 13-10)**

Earphone-Microphone

- Audio Output
- Microphone Setting
- Answer Calls Automatically
- Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone **(▶ P. 13-11)**



Video Call Window



Video Call Indicators

	Mute
	Hyper Clear Voice High
	Hyper Clear Voice Low
	Transmitting Audio
	Transmission Failed
	Transmitting Video
	Transmission Failed
	Sending Camera Image
	Substitute Image
	Handsfree ON
	Handsfree OFF
	Visual Check

- Photo Mode Portrait
- Photo Mode Scenery
- Photo Mode Close-up

Making Video Calls

1 Enter phone number



Phone Number Entry Window

■ Correcting Misentries

↔ to scroll cursor ↔ Reenter number(s)

■ Deleting Numbers

↔ Select a number ↔

Press and hold to delete all numbers to the left of the selected number.

■ Deleting Phone Number

↔

2



Video Call Window

3 to end call

Note

- The other party may hear a short beep when to , or are pressed during a call.



Tip

- Always include the area code even when dialing from the same area.
- Video calls made to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are automatically switched to voice calls.
- An error message with a possible cause appears when a video call fails to be connected.
- Charging may automatically stop or camera image may switch to substitute image if charging while making a video call, depending on temperature and handset usage (ex. also recording TV).
- Call ends or is placed on hold when handset is closed. Connect stereo earphone-microphone to talk with handset closed.

Available Keys during Video Calls

Adjust Earpiece Volume	or press and hold
	OFF
Hold Call	
Toggle Main Window Images	Press and hold to toggle image as follows: The other party's image → Your image → The other party's image (sub window off) → Your image (sub window off)
Toggle Rear and Front Camera	Press to toggle Rear Camera and Front Camera.
Zoom In/Out Outgoing Camera Image	
Mute Audio	Press and hold . To cancel mute, press again.

Answering Video Calls

1 When a video call arrives →

■ To Send Substitute Image
→

2 to end call

More Features

Advanced

Outgoing Call Functions

- Show/Hide Caller ID
- Adjust Earpiece Volume Beforehand
- Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

▶ P. 3-16

Handling Incoming Calls

- Reject Calls
- Place Calls on Hold
- Forward Calls

▶ P. 3-16

Engaged Call Operations

- Handsfree
- Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)
- Set Image Quality
- Adjust Brightness
- Change White Balance
- Change Color Tone
- Change Photo Mode
- Backlight Illumination Time

▶ P. 3-17



Customize

Outgoing Calls

- Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers
- Set Numbers after “*” as Sub Address

[▶ P. 13-12](#)

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Call Image
- Set an Incoming Call Image or Video

[▶ P. 13-3](#)

Incoming Call Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Vibration
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls
- Set an Incoming Call Image
- Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls

[▶ P. 13-8](#)

Answering Incoming Calls

- Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key
- Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

[▶ P. 13-9](#)

Call Settings

- Set Reconnection Tone
- Set Noise Reduction
- Set Weak Signal Alarm
- Set Clarity of Other Party Voice
- Change Color of Illumination While Calling
- Set a Hold Message
- Set Closing Sound Off
- End Call By Closing Handset

[▶ P. 13-13](#)

Earphone-Microphone

- Audio Output
- Microphone Setting
- Answer Calls Automatically

[▶ P. 13-11](#)

Video Calls

- Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls
- Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails
- Set an Image to Appear in Main Window
- Reverse Front Camera Image
- Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls

[▶ P. 13-14](#)



Dialing from Call Logs

Phone numbers and dates and times of incoming and outgoing calls are saved on handset as call logs. Access call logs to return calls quickly.

Call Log Indicators

The following indicators appear in Redial, Dialed Calls and Received Calls windows.

Voice Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
International Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
Video Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed
International Video Calls	
	Outgoing & Incoming
	Missed
	Unchecked Missed

	Answering Machine
	Voice Messages
	Video Messages
	Packet Transmission
	Outgoing & Incoming Calls
	Appears when outside the GMT+09 time zone.

Redial/Received Calls

1 or



Redial Window



Received Calls Window

2 Select a record or

Dialed Calls

1 **Phone** **Dialed Calls**



Dialed Calls Window

2 Select a record or

Checking Number of Missed Calls

1 **Phone** **Received Calls**

The total number of incoming calls, number of missed calls, and number of unchecked missed calls appear.

2 **All calls or Missed calls**



Missed Calls

Illumination flashes.

Select the "Missed Call" icon to check details or select the icon and press and hold **[CLEAR]** to turn off illumination.

Call Time & Cost

Check the total and last call times and costs.

Call cost and cost limit may be unavailable depending on your subscription.

- 1 → **Phone** → → **Check Phone setting** → → **Call Time/Charge** → → **Call data** →

Tip

- Use indicated call times and costs only as a guide. The actual call time and cost may be different. Your handset may not indicate call costs depending on the service you subscribe. Indicated costs do not include consumption tax.
- When the last or total call time exceeds 199 hours 59 minutes 59 seconds, counting restarts from zero seconds.

More Features

Advanced

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

- Change Font Size
- Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)
- Delete Records

▶ P. 3-18

Call Time & Cost

- Reset Total Call Time
- Reset Total Call Cost

▶ P. 3-18

Customize

Incoming Call Alerts

- Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls

▶ P. 13-8

Checking Call Logs

- Notify Missed Calls with Tone (When Pressed)
- Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

▶ P. 13-10

Call Costs

- Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost
- Set a Maximum Call Cost Limit

▶ P. 13-13



Speed Dial

Enter Phone Book entry number (000 to 009) and press for direct access to that entry.

- If a Phone Book entry has more than one phone number, handset dials the first number.

1 to → or

Tomo-Den

Save up to five Phone Book entries to Tomo-Den for quick access.

- Tomo-Den is unavailable in Secret Data Only Mode.
- Tomo-Den is available in Secret Mode, however secret entries cannot be saved to Tomo-Den.

Saving Entries to Tomo-Den

1 → **Phone** → → **Tomo-Den** →



Tomo-Den Window

2 → **Select a tab** → →

- ▶ **To Search from Phone Book**
View phonebook → → Search
Phone Book → Select an entry →
- ▶ **To Enter the Information**
Direct input → → Enter items →

3 **Select a phone number or e-mail address** →

When a checkbox is selected, other numbers/addresses become grayed and cannot be selected. To select another number/address, first cancel the currently selected checkbox.

4

Using Tomo-Den

1 → **Phone** → → **Tomo-Den** →

2 → **Select an entry** → **CALL, MAIL or VIDEO CALL** →

Tip

- Alternatively, press - in Step 2 to select a recipient.

More Features

Advanced

Speed Dial

- Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den
- Change Tomo-Den Entry Image
- To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries

P. 3-18



Calling While Abroad (Global Roaming)

Make calls while overseas.

- Handset is compatible with the 3G network only. Use Global Roaming Service within 3G areas. For details and application, see: http://mb.softbank.jp/en/global_services/global_roaming/ or contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-53).

Calling Japan and Other Countries

1 Press and hold

“+” is entered.

2 Enter country code and phone number (omit first “0” from area code) ⇒

Tip

- Do not omit the first “0” from area code when calling Italy.

Calling within the Same Country

1 Enter phone number with area code ⇒

Do not omit “0” from area code.
Country code not required.

More Features

Customize

Global Roaming

- Set Operator
- Search Available Operator
- Set Priority for Operators
- Show Operator Name While Roaming

▶ P. 13-14)



Overview

The following services are available with your handset.

Call Forward	Forward calls to a preset phone number.
Voice Mail	Forward calls to Voice Mail Center when unable to answer a call. Missed Call Notification Notification (SMS) arrives for missed calls while handset was off, out of range or engaged, etc.
Call Waiting*	Place the current call on hold to answer another incoming call. Talk with two parties alternately.
Group Calling*	Call others during a call and talk with multiple parties simultaneously.
Call Barring	Select whether to restrict incoming and outgoing calls and SMS.
Caller ID	Select whether to show or hide your number when making calls.

* Separate application is required.

Activating Call Forward

<Example> Forward calls to a specified number after a set ring time

- 1 → **Phone** → → **Check Phone setting** → → **Optional Services** → → **Voice Mail/Divert** →



Voice Mail/Divert Window

- 2 **Divert ON** → → **YES** → → **Voice/Video Calls, Voice Calls or Video Calls** →

- ▶ **To Enter Phone Number**
Enter phone number →
- ▶ **To Search from Phone Book**
 → Search Phone Book → Select an entry → → Select a phone number → (twice)

- 3 **No Answer** → → **Select a ring time** →

To forward calls immediately, select **Always** and press .

Tip

- If **No Answer** is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded. If **Always** is set, handset does not ring/vibrate and all calls are forwarded to the preset number.
- Call Forward and Voice Mail cannot be set simultaneously. Call Forward for video calls is only available with Voice Mail.
- If you activate Call Forward when Voice Mail has already been set, Voice Mail is canceled.

Activating Voice Mail

<Example> Forward calls to Voice Mail Center after a set ring time

- 1 **[Voice Mail/Divert] window** → **Voice Mail ON** → → **YES** →

- 2 **No Answer** → → **Select a ring time** →

To forward calls to Voice Mail Center immediately, select **Always** and press .



Tip

- If *No Answer* is set, press to answer incoming call before the call is forwarded to Voice Mail Center. If *Always* is set, handset does not ring or vibrate and all calls are forwarded to Voice Mail Center.
- Voice Mail and Call Forward cannot be set simultaneously. Voice Mail is only available with Call Forward for video calls.
- If you activate Voice Mail when Call Forward has already been set, Call Forward is canceled.

Missed Call Notification

SMS notification informs you of missed calls while handset was off, out of range, engaged, etc.



Follow voice guidance.

To Play Messages

- 1** [Voice Mail/Divert] window ⇨
Play Messages ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Canceling Call Forward & Voice Mail

- 1** [Voice Mail/Divert] window ⇨
Voice Mail/Divert OFF ⇨ ● ⇨
YES ⇨ ●

More Features

Advanced

Call Forward & Voice Mail

- Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages
 - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-19

Call Waiting

- Set Call Waiting
 - Answer Incoming Calls during Calls
 - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-19

Group Calling

- Hold Current Call to Make Another Call
 - Switch Parties
 - Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously
 - Talk with a Specific Party
 - End Call with a Specific Party
- ▶ P. 3-19

Call Barring

- Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS
 - Cancel Call Barring
 - Change Network Password
 - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-20

Caller ID

- Show/Hide Phone Number
 - Check Current Setting Status
- ▶ P. 3-20



Outgoing Call Functions

Show/Hide Caller ID

Enter phone number → → **Notify Caller ID** → ● → **OFF, ON** or **Cancel prefix** → ● → or

Alternatively, enter "186" before the phone number to show your number, or "184" to hide your number.

Show/hide Caller ID each time you dial from Phone Book or call logs (Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls).

Adjust Earpiece Volume Beforehand

Press and hold → or

Add Area Code and Country Code (Prefix Numbers)

Enter phone number → → **Prefix numbers** → ● → Select an item → ● → or

Save area codes and country codes beforehand for quick access to prefixes.

Add prefix from Phone Book entry, Redial, Dialed Calls or Received Calls windows.

国際発信 (International Dialing Code) is 0046010 by default.

International Calls

Enter "+" to Call Abroad

Press and hold → Enter country code → Enter area code → Enter phone number → → **Dial** → ●

"+" appears when you press and hold , indicating that the international code set in *Auto int'l call set.* is entered.

Handling Incoming Calls

Voice & Video Calls

Reject Calls

When a call arrives → → **Call Rejection** → ●

Place Calls on Hold

When a call arrives → → To answer call →

Press again to end the call on hold.

Forward Calls

When a call arrives → → **Call**

Forwarding → ●

This procedure is available when Call Forward has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.

Voice Calls

Forward Calls to Voice Mail Center

When a call arrives → → **Call**

Forwarding → ●

This procedure is available when Voice Mail has been activated from Voice Mail/Divert window.



Engaged Call Operations

Start Here

[Voice Call] window P. 3-3

[Video Call] window..... P. 3-7

Voice & Video Calls

Handsfree

[Voice Call] window/ [Video Call] window
→

Press again to cancel handsfree mode.

Make Other Party Clearer to Hear (Hyper Clear Voice)

[Voice Call] window/ [Video Call] window
→

Press to toggle setting High, OFF or Low.

Unavailable when handsfree is On or when an external device (ex. stereo earphone-microphone) is connected.

Voice Calls

Send Touch Tones

[Voice Call] window → (twice) → **Phone** → ● → **Check Phone setting** → ● → **Other settings** → ● → **Pause dial** → ● → ● (three times)

- To send touch tones all at once:
 - Press and hold → **Send at one time** → ●

Each time you press , a touch tone sequence until "p" (pause) is sent.

Save touch tones in advance (P. 13-12).

Video Calls

Set Image Quality

[Video Call] window → → **V. phone settings** → ● → **Visual prefer.** → ● → Select an item → ●

Adjust Brightness

[Video Call] window → → **V. phone settings** → ● → **Brightness** → ● → Select a level → ●

Change White Balance

[Video Call] window → → **V. phone settings** → ● → **White balance** → ● → Select an item → ●

Change Color Tone

[Video Call] window → → **V. phone settings** → ● → **Color mode set** → ● →

Change Photo Mode

[Video Call] window → → **V. phone settings** → ● → **Photo mode** → ● → Select a mode → ●

Available when sending Rear Camera image.

Backlight Illumination Time

[Video Call] window → → **Display light** → ● → **All time ON** or **10 seconds ON** → ●



Answering Machine

Start Here

[Play/Delete Voice Message] window P. 3-5

Delete Recorded Messages

[Play/Delete Voice Message] window →
Select a message → → *Delete this*,
Delete rec. msg. or *Delete all* → ● → YES
→ ●

Selecting *Delete all* also deletes a voice memo if it has been saved.

Call Logs

Start Here

[Redial] window P. 3-10
[Dialed Calls] window P. 3-10
[Received Calls] window P. 3-10

Redial, Dialed Calls & Received Calls

Change Font Size

[Redial] window, [Dialed Calls] window
or [Received Calls] window → →
Standard font or *Big font* → ●

Show Ring Time (Missed Calls)

[Received Calls] window → → *Ring time* → ●

Delete Records

[Redial] window, [Dialed Calls] window or
[Received Calls] window → → *Delete*
→ ●

- Delete Selected Entry
→ *Delete this* → ● → YES → ●
- Select Entries to Delete
→ *Delete selected* → ● → Select records
→ ● → → YES → ●
- Delete All Entries
→ *Delete all* → ● → Enter Security Code
→ ● → YES → ●

Selecting *Delete all* in Redial window or Dialed Calls window deletes all records from both Redial and Dialed Calls.

Call Time & Cost

Reset Total Call Time

→ *Phone* → ● → *Check Phone setting*
→ ● → *Call Time/Charge* → ● → *Reset total*
→ ● → Enter Security Code → ● →
Reset total duration → ● → YES → ●

Reset Total Call Cost

→ *Phone* → ● → *Check Phone setting*
→ ● → *Call Time/Charge* → ● → *Reset total*
→ ● → Enter Security Code → ● →
Reset total cost → ● → YES → ● →
Enter PIN2 → ●

Speed Dial

Start Here

[Tomo-Den] window P. 3-12

Cancel Entries from Tomo-Den

[Tomo-Den] window → → Select a tab
→

- To Release Selected Entry
→ *Release this* → ● → YES → ●
- To Release All Entries
→ *Release all* → ● → Enter Security Code
→ ● → YES → ●

Change Tomo-Den Entry Image

[Tomo-Den] window → → Select a tab
→ → *Image* → ● → Select a folder
→ ● → Select an image → ●



Advanced Features

To Send an S! Mail to All Tomo-Den Entries

[Tomo-Den] window → → **Broadcast mail** → → Create S! Mail →

Optional Services

Start Here

[Voice Mail/Divert] window P. 3-14

[Voice Call] window P. 3-3

Call Forward & Voice Mail

Delete Icons for Notifying Recorded Messages

[Voice Mail/Divert] window → **Erase Icon** → → **YES** →

Check Current Setting Status

[Voice Mail/Divert] window → **Get Status** →

Call Waiting

Set Call Waiting

→ **Phone** → → **Check Phone setting** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Waiting** → → **ON or OFF** → → **YES** →

Answer Incoming Calls during Calls

[Voice Call] window → Call waiting tone sounds →

Press to toggle between two parties.

Check Current Setting Status

→ **Phone** → → **Check Phone setting** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Waiting** → → **Get Status** →

Group Calling

Hold Current Call to Make Another Call

[Voice Call] window → → Enter phone number →

To dial from Phone Book, press or , search Phone Book, select a number and then press .

To dial from Dialed/Received Calls, press or , select a phone number or name and then press .

Switch Parties

[Voice Call] window →

Press to toggle parties.

Talk with Multiple Parties Simultaneously

[Voice Call] window → While talking with one party → → **Join Multi Party** →

Talk with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window → While talking with multiple parties → → **Select Ans. Call** → → Select a party →

The other parties are placed on hold while talking with the selected party.



End Call with a Specific Party

[Voice Call] window → While talking with multiple parties → → **Select Disc call** → → Select a party →

Call Barring

Restrict Incoming/Outgoing Calls & SMS

→ **Phone** → → **Check Phone setting** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Outgoing Calls or Incoming Calls** → → Select an item → → **YES** → → Enter Network Password →

Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when Call Barring is set.

When **Bar All Outgoing Calls** or **Bar All Incoming Calls** is set for Call Barring, Call Forward is unavailable (When Call Forward is set, Call Barring is unavailable).

If Network Password is incorrectly entered three times consecutively, Call Barring settings are locked. Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-53).

Cancel Call Barring

→ **Phone** → → **Check Phone setting** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Cancel All Barring** → → **YES** → → Enter Network Password →

Change Network Password

→ **Phone** → → **Check Phone setting** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Set NW Password** → → **YES** → → Enter current Network Password → → Enter new Network Password → → Enter new Network Password again for confirmation →

Check Current Setting Status

→ **Phone** → → **Check Phone setting** → → **Optional Services** → → **Call Barring** → → **Get Status** → → Select an item →

Caller ID

Show/Hide Phone Number

→ **Phone** → → **Check Phone setting** → → **Optional Services** → → **Caller ID Notification** → → **Activate/Deactivate** → → **ON** or **OFF** → → **YES** →

Check Current Setting Status

→ **Phone** → → **Check Phone setting** → → **Optional Services** → → **Caller ID Notification** → → **Get Status** →

Security



PIN Settings	4-2
Setting PIN1 Entry	4-2
Changing PIN1/PIN2	4-2
Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use	4-3
Dial Lock	4-3
Original Lock	4-3
Disabling Keypad	4-4
Secure Remote Lock	4-4
Prohibiting Outgoing/Incoming Calls	4-5
Rejecting Calls without Caller ID	4-5
Rejecting Calls from Unsaved Numbers	4-5
Delaying Ringtone	4-5
Emission OFF Mode	4-5
Secret Modes	4-6
Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode	4-6
Hiding Handset Data.....	4-6

4



Setting PIN1 Entry

Set to require PIN1 entry each time handset is turned on.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security**
⇒ ⇒ **PIN setting** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒
- 3 **PIN1 code entry set** ⇒ ⇒ **ON**
⇒ ⇒ Enter PIN1 ⇒

Changing PIN1/PIN2

● *PIN1 code entry set* must be set to **ON** before changing PIN1.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security**
⇒ ⇒ **PIN setting** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒
- 3 **Change PIN1 code** or **Change PIN2 code** ⇒
- 4 Enter current PIN1/PIN2 ⇒
- 5 Enter new PIN1/PIN2 ⇒ ⇒
Enter new PIN1/PIN2 again for confirmation ⇒



Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use

Dial Lock

Prevent others from operating handset.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Function Lock** ⇒
- 2 **Enter Security Code** ⇒
- 3 **Dial lock** ⇒

Tip

- The following operations are possible even when Dial Lock is activated:
 - Power on/off
 - Calling emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118
 - Answering incoming voice/video calls

Canceling Dial Lock

- 1 **Enter Security Code** ⇒
If incorrect Security Code is entered, press and enter correct Security Code.

Tip

- If Security Code is incorrectly entered five times, handset powers off. Turn handset power on and enter correct Security Code.

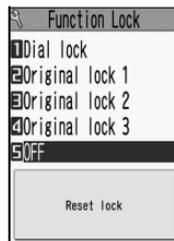
Original Lock

Prevent others from accessing handset functions/data (e.g. Phone Book, Mail, etc). Select from three locks (1, 2 or 3) and customize as required.

- For IC Card Lock and Call Remote Lock, see P. 10-3 and P. 10-4.

Activating Original Lock

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Function Lock** ⇒
- 2 **Enter Security Code** ⇒



Function Lock Window

- 3 **Select an Original Lock** ⇒
Functions/data specified under the selected lock type are locked.

Tip

- To edit title: [Function Lock] window ⇒ Select an Original Lock ⇒ ⇒ **Edit title** ⇒ ⇒ Edit title ⇒

When Original Lock is Set

Security Code entry is requested when accessing a locked function or data. Enter Security Code to unlock and access function/data. Setting returns when handset returns to Standby.

Note

- *Dial/sending mail and Incoming/Mail disp.* cannot be unlocked temporarily.



Prohibiting Unauthorized Handset Use

Customizing Original Lock

Set lock per function, group or category.

Some functions/groups are locked.

All functions in Group/Category are locked.

Customize by Function/Data

1 [Function Lock] window \Rightarrow Select an Original Lock \Rightarrow

2 Select a category \Rightarrow (\Rightarrow Select a group \Rightarrow)

3 Select an item \Rightarrow

Checked items are locked. To uncheck an item, select the item and press .

■ To Select All Functions
 \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select all \Rightarrow

■ To Deselect All Functions
 \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Release all \Rightarrow

4 (twice) (\Rightarrow)

Customize by Category or Group

1 [Function Lock] window \Rightarrow Select an Original Lock \Rightarrow

2 Select a category (\Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select a group)

3 \Rightarrow Select \Rightarrow

To deselect, press , select **Release** and then press .

■ To Select Lock for Category or Group
 \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select all \Rightarrow

■ To Cancel Lock for Category or Group
 \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Release all \Rightarrow

4 (\Rightarrow)

Disabling Keypad

Set Keypad Lock to automatically lock handset keys when handset is closed or when handset is not operated for a certain period of time.

Setting Keypad Lock

1 \Rightarrow Settings \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Security \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Keypad lock \Rightarrow

2 Enter Security Code \Rightarrow \Rightarrow

▶ To Lock When Handset Closed After folded \Rightarrow \Rightarrow ON \Rightarrow

▶ To Lock After Handset Closed a Certain Time

Timer \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select time until lock activates \Rightarrow

3

When Keypad Lock is Set

All key operations are disabled, except for answering incoming calls and turning power on/off.

appears at bottom of Display when key operation is available in Keypad Lock.

Tip

- Emergency numbers 110, 119 and 118 are available even when *Keypad lock* is set.

Temporarily Unlocking Keypad Lock

1 When Keypad Lock is set \Rightarrow Enter Security Code \Rightarrow

Secure Remote Lock

If your handset is lost, lock handset functions remotely from a PC or other mobile phones. All key operations are disabled except Power Key. For details, visit SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp>), or access My SoftBank from your handset: \Rightarrow メニューリスト (Menu List) \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **My SoftBank** \Rightarrow



Rejecting Calls without Caller ID

Incoming calls from hidden and/or unidentified numbers can be rejected.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Call setting w/o ID** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒
- 3 **Unknown, Payphone or User unset** ⇒
- 4 **Reject** ⇒

Tip

- To allow incoming calls, after step 3: **Accept** ⇒ ⇒ **Select ring tone** or **Select calling disp.** ⇒ ⇒ **Select type** ⇒ (⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒) ⇒ **Select a ringtone or image** ⇒

Rejecting Calls from Unsaved Numbers

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Reject unknown** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒
- 3 **Reject** ⇒

Note

- This procedure is unavailable when *Set mute seconds* under *Ring time (sec.)* is set to *ON* (P. 4-5).

Tip

- To allow incoming calls, after step 2: **Accept** ⇒

Delaying Ringtone

Delay ringtone, for callers not saved in Phone Book (including Secret Phone Book). In addition, set *Missed calls display* to *Not display* so missed calls with a short ring time do not appear in Received Calls. This can prevent you from accidentally returning calls from nuisance calls.

- This procedure is unavailable when *Reject unknown* is set to *Reject*.

- 1 ⇒ **Phone** ⇒ ⇒ **Check Phone setting** ⇒ ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Ring time (sec.)** ⇒
- 2 **Set mute seconds** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ⇒ Enter time before ringtone plays

- 3 **Missed calls display** ⇒ ⇒ **Display or Not display** ⇒

Tip

- Ringing starts in zero seconds when *Set mute seconds* is *OFF*.

Emission OFF Mode

The following are prohibited in Emission OFF Mode:

- Incoming/Outgoing Calls
- Incoming/Outgoing Messages
- Yahoo! Keitai Access

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Emission OFF Mode** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Repeat procedure to cancel Emission OFF Mode.

Tip

- Emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) are available even in Emission OFF Mode.



Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

Activate Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode to view secret Phone Book entries, secret Schedule events and secret files.

Secret Mode: View all data and secret data. Secret Data Only Mode: Only secret data is available for Phone Book and Schedule, although all data and secret data can be viewed for images, mail, and bookmarks.

Activating Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Security** ⇒ ⇒ **Secret mode or Secret data only mode** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒

Canceling Secret Mode & Secret Data Only Mode

- 1

Tip

- Making or receiving a call cancels Secret Mode/Secret Data Only Mode.

Hiding Handset Data

Files stored in Secret Folders are accessible only when Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode is activated.

- Storable file types: Images, videos, received and sent messages and bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai and PC Browser).
- Data saved on memory card or USIM Card cannot be stored in Secret Folders.
- Each Secret Folder of Data Folder has a fixed storage capacity as follows:
 - My Picture: Approx. 2 MB
 - Videos: Approx. 10 MB

Moving Data to Secret Folders

- 1 Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode
- 2 From a folder, select an item ⇒ ⇒ **Keep in secret** ⇒

Moving Data from Secret Folders

- 1 Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode
- 2 In a folder list ⇒ **Secret** ⇒
- 3 Select an item ⇒ ⇒ **Put out** ⇒
- 4 Select a destination folder ⇒

Tip

- Functions available with Secret Folder data are limited.

Mail



Overview	5-2
Sending Messages	5-3
Sending S! Mail	5-3
Sending SMS Messages	5-5
Receiving & Opening Messages	5-6
Opening New Messages.....	5-6
Opening Inbox Messages.....	5-6
Replying to Messages.....	5-7
Using Mail List	5-7
Quake Alert	5-9
Setting Quake Alert	5-10
Receiving Quake Alerts.....	5-10
Setting Alert Tone in Manner Mode.....	5-10
Handling Messages	5-12
Message Storage Locations	5-12
Opening Sent & Received Messages	5-12
Sorting Messages.....	5-14
Prohibiting Access to Messages.....	5-14
Saving S! Mail Attachments.....	5-15
Advanced Features	5-17
Sending Messages	5-17
Receiving/Opening Messages	5-20
Managing/Using Messages	5-21

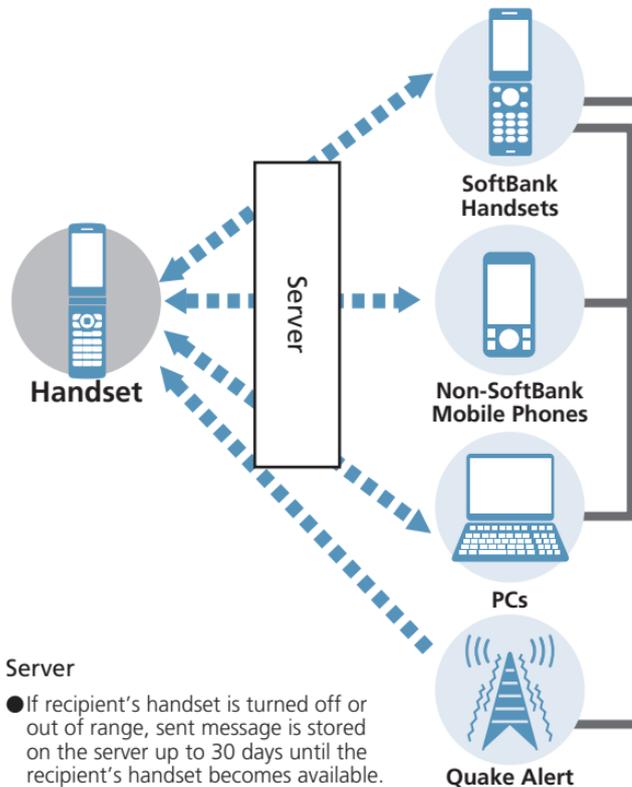
5



Overview

Handset supports S! Mail and SMS.

5
Mail



Server

- If recipient's handset is turned off or out of range, sent message is stored on the server up to 30 days until the recipient's handset becomes available.

Available Mail Services

SMS

Exchange short text messages with other SoftBank handsets.

S! Mail (Separate contract required)

Exchange long text messages with S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets and other e-mail compatible mobile phones and PCs. Images and melodies can also be attached to S! Mail.

Customize Handset E-mail Address.
Effective for blocking spam.

Graphic Mail

Use HTML mail to change font size/color, background, etc.

Emotion-Expressing Mail

Based on sender's message, handset shows a pictogram matching the sender's mood.

Quake Alert

Receive Quake Alerts provided by Japan Meteorological Agency.



Sending S! Mail

1 Press and hold



Composition Window

2 Select address field **Address** Enter address

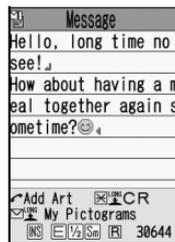


To add more recipients, Select address field, press and repeat the same step.

3 Select Subject field Enter subject

If (double-byte mode) appears, switch to single-byte mode (P. 2-24).

4 Select text field Enter text



Text Entry Window

5

■ To Cancel Transmission

When *Start Packet Connection* appears ; or

During Transmission

■ If *Resend mail?* Appears

YES

Tip

- Add up to 20 recipients total between To, Cc and Bcc fields.

Attaching Files

Attach the following files to S! Mail:

- Images
 - Videos
 - Melodies
 - Music (Songs)
 - Phone Book entries
 - Account Details
 - Calendar event
 - Bookmarks
- (Schedule/To Do List)

- For information about image, video, melody and music files, see P. 11-2.

1 [Composition] window **Attach file**

2 Select a file type (Enter Security Code) Select a file

■ Images with Large File Size

Attach mail or *QVGA scale down*

(Check an image

Note

- Copy protected files cannot be sent as attachments or output to external devices.

Tip

- To open or play an attached file: Select the file



Sending SMS Messages

Send short text messages to SoftBank handsets, using recipient's phone number.

1 ⇒ **Compose SMS** ⇒



SMS Composition Window

2 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter address** ⇒
⇒ **Enter phone number** ⇒

3 ⇒ ⇒ **Enter text** ⇒

4

More Features

Advanced

Composing Messages

- Enter Address from Phone Book
- Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List
- Enter Address from Mail Member List
- Set To, Cc or Bcc
- Delete an Address
- Insert Header/Signature

- Enter My Pictograms
- Delete Text
- Change SMS Message to S! Mail

▶ P. 5-17

Sending Messages

- Set Priority (S! Mail)
- Server Storage Period (SMS)
- Check Delivery
- Save Messages to Draft
- Quit Composing and Delete Message

▶ P. 5-17

Attaching Files

- Shoot a Still Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail
- Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

▶ P. 5-18

Mail Member

- Edit an Address
- Delete Addresses from a Mail Member List
- Edit a Mail Member List Name
- Reset a Mail Member List Name

▶ P. 5-18

Graphic Mail

- Add/Edit Text Decoration
- Undo
- Preview Graphic Mail
- Cancel All Decoration
- Create Graphic Mail Automatically
- Save Graphic Mail as a Template
- Download Templates
- Create Graphic Mail from a Template

- Edit a Template
- Edit Title of a Template
- Delete Templates

▶ P. 5-19

Customize

Display Settings

- Set an Outgoing Message Image

▶ P. 13-3

S! Mail Settings

- Edit Header/Signature
- Insert Header/Signature Automatically
- Set to Check Delivery

▶ P. 13-15

SMS Settings

- Set to Check Delivery
- Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages
- Set SMS Input Language

▶ P. 13-15



Opening New Messages

Received Result window opens for new messages.

Emotion-Expressing Mail

When an S! Mail is received, a pictogram matching the message content appears in Received Result Window and Message List. Set the Keyword setting on, to show Keyword indicators when messages include user-set keywords (P. 13-15).



Indicator/
Pictogram

Received Result Window

● Pictograms

	Hurry		Advice
	Like		Cheer
	Dislike		Join
	Happy		Impression
	Angry		Request
	Sad		Notice
	Fun		OK
	Surprise		Reply
	Question		Other

1 [Received Result] window ⇨ Mail ⇨ ●

2 Select a message ⇨ ●

Note

- By default, complete S! Mail messages (including attachments) are automatically retrieved. Transmission fees apply, depending on your subscription plan. While traveling abroad, message retrieval may incur high transmission fees.

Tip

- Alternatively open new messages from desktop notification.
- Indicator may not always correspond to message content.
- — appears if message content does not match any of the above moods or information.

Opening Inbox Messages

1 ⇨ Inbox ⇨ ●



Folder List



Receiving & Opening Messages

2 Select a folder ⇨ ●



Message List

3 Select a message ⇨ ●



Message Window

To check previous/next message, press
⏪.

Tip

- Some attachments may require content keys to open/play the file.

Replying to Messages

1 [Inbox Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ● ⇨ ✉

■ When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients

⇨ *To sender* or *To all* ⇨ ●

2 Edit subject/text ⇨ ✉

Replying (Quote Message)

1 [Inbox Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ● ⇨ [P] ⇨ Reply with quote ⇨ ●

■ When Original Message Has Multiple Recipients

⇨ *To sender* or *To all* ⇨ ●

2 Edit subject/text ⇨ ✉

Tip

- Attachments are automatically deleted from reply messages.
- Quoting text is only available for S! Mail replies.

Using Mail List

Retrieve Mail List and select messages to download or forward.

1 ✉ ⇨ **Check Mail** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Server Mail** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Mail list** ⇨ ● (⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●)



Mail List

2 Select a message ⇨ [P] ⇨ **Message receive** ⇨ ● ▶

▶ **To Receive a Message**

Receive this ⇨ ●

▶ **To Receive Multiple Messages**

Receive selected ⇨ ● ⇨ Select messages ⇨ ● ⇨ ✉

▶ **To Receive All Messages**

Receive all ⇨ ●



Tip

- If download fails while retrieving all messages, download is canceled.
- When there is only one message, message opens upon retrieval.

More Features

Advanced

Receiving Messages

- Manually Retrieve Messages

(▶ P. 5-20)

Checking Messages

- Retrieve Complete S! Mail
- Delete S! Mail from Server
- Read Out Messages
- Check Message Information

(▶ P. 5-20)

Server Message Operations

- Update Mail List
- Switch Mail List Views
- Check Server Message Information
- Forward a Server Message
- Delete Server Messages
- Check Server Memory Status

(▶ P. 5-20)

Customize

Display Settings

- Set an Incoming Message Image or Video
- Set Image for New Message/Received Result Window
- Show New Message Info While Viewing TV

(▶ P. 13-3)

Incoming Message Alerts

- Adjust Ringtone Volume
- Set a Ringtone
- Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones
- Set Vibration
- Set Ringtone Duration for Incoming Message
- Set Illumination Color
- Set Illumination Pattern
- Set Illumination to Flash for New Messages
- Set an Incoming Message Image

(▶ P. 13-8)

Incoming Message Settings

- Customize E-mail Address
- Do Not Show Emotion Indicators
- Show Keyword Indicators
- Delete Keywords
- Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation
- Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages
- Set Voice to Read Out Messages
- Set Manual Receive

(▶ P. 13-15)

Reply Settings

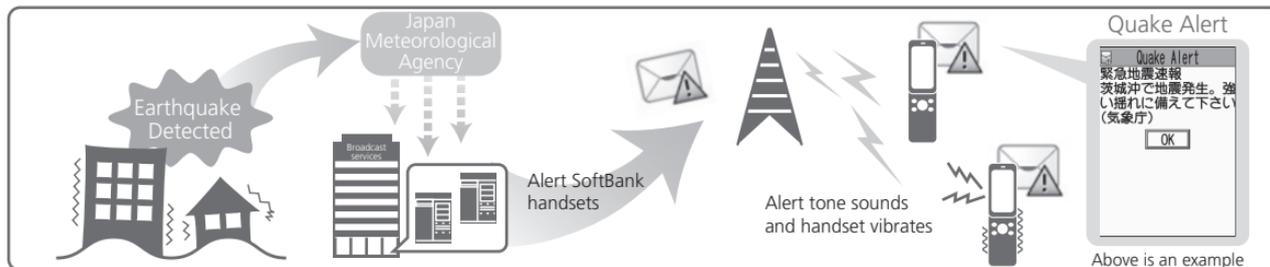
- Change Quotation Marks

(▶ P. 13-16)



Quake Alert

This service is provided by SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. to alert SoftBank users near an epicenter of a possible earthquake. When a Quake Alert is received, seek shelter and remain calm. Quake Alert is set to **OFF** by default. Set to **ON** to use function.



Note

- Setting Quake Alert may decrease continuous standby time by half or less.

Tip

- Quake Alert is sent to areas predicted for strong tremors (seismic intensity of 4 or higher) when the maximum intensity is predicted at 5- or higher.
- When initial tremors (P-waves) are detected near the epicenter, estimated location and intensity are automatically calculated. An Alert is sent several seconds to tens of seconds before strong tremors (S-waves) hit.
- Regions near the epicenter may not receive Quake Alert in time for strong tremors. Accuracy of intensity may vary.
- Service only available in Japan.
- Quake Alert is a free service. However, connecting to associated web links will incur transmission fees.
- SoftBank is not liable for losses incurred by receiving or not receiving Quake Alerts.
- For details about Earthquake Early Warning provided by Japan Meteorological Agency, see: <http://www.jma.go.jp/jma/indexe.html> (PC)



Setting Quake Alert

Set handset to receive Quake Alerts.

- 1 ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ●
- 2 **Other settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Quake Alert settings** ⇒ ●
- 3 **Select item** ⇒ ●

Receiving:

Information and disclaimer appear; read and select **ON** to proceed.

Duration:

Set Alert duration between 01 and 30 seconds.

Note

- Quake Alerts are saved in Inbox.
- Save up to 100 Quake Alerts on handset.

Tip

- When Inbox memory is full, old Quake Alerts are deleted in order of Trash box, read, and unread alerts.

Receiving Quake Alerts

appears at top of Display for a new Quake Alert.

When an Alert is received, notification appears, Alert tone sounds, Illumination flashes red, and handset vibrates.

Press ●, **CLEAR**, or to close notification.

Setting Alert Tone in Manner Mode

Set Alert tone on or off in Manner Mode.

- 1 ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ●
- 2 **Other settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Quake Alert settings** ⇒ ●
- 3 **For Manner Mode** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Ring in manner mode or Follow manner mode** ⇒ ●

Tip

- Handset is set to **Ring in manner mode** by default.

Note

- Quake Alert is unavailable when or during:
 - Power Off
 - Out of range
 - A voice call
 - Packet transmission
 - A video call
 - Global roaming
 - Secure Remote Lock
 - Emission OFF Mode
 - Infrared transmission
- A notification may not appear for a new Quake Alert when:
 - Camera activated
 - Watching or recording TV
 - Alarm activated
 - microSD memory card being accessed
- Even within the service area, Quake Alert may be unavailable when signal reception is poor (in a tunnel, under ground, etc.).
- Missed Quake Alerts are not resent.
- Time lag may occur between Quake Alert reception and Earthquake Early Warning alerts provided by other means (TV, radio, etc.).
- Depending on various factors, an Alert intended for handsets in a different area may be received on your handset.



Tip

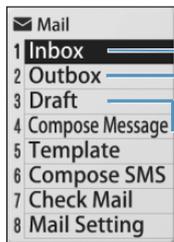
- For details about service area and other information, see SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp. Website (<http://www.softbank.jp/>).
- For false Alerts, a retraction message is sent. Ringtone, Illumination flash pattern, and Vibrator for retractions follow **Mail Setting** settings.
- Illumination flash pattern and Vibrator pattern follow Quake Alert setting.



Message Storage Locations

Press to open Mail Menu.

Sent, received and draft messages are saved in the locations below.



Message Menu

Received messages

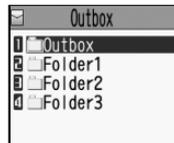
Sent messages

Draft messages

Opening Sent & Received Messages

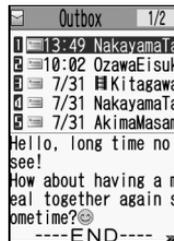
<Example> Open a Sent Message

1 → **Outbox** →



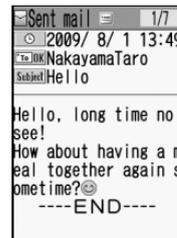
Folder List

2 Select a folder →



Message List

3 Select a message →



Message Window

To check previous/next message, press .

Tip

- When Outbox/Inbox is full, old messages are deleted in order of Trash box then Outbox/Inbox when a new message is sent or received. Unread and protected messages and Secret Folder messages are not deleted.



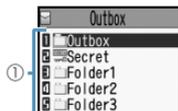
Windows & Indicators

Check message status, attachment type, etc. by indicators.

Folder Lists

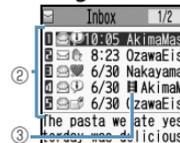


Inbox Folder List

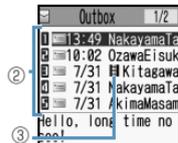


Outbox Folder List

Message Lists



Inbox Message List



Outbox Message List

Message Windows



Received Message Window



Sent Message Window

①	Folder Type General Folder Trash box Secret Folder
②	Message Status Unread Read Protected (Unread) Protected (Read) Forwarded Replied Sent to a Single Recipient Sent to Multiple Recipients
③	Message Type SMS on Handset Quake Alert SMS on USIM Card S! Mail Notification Attachment Type Image Video Melody (Tones/Ringtones) Music Copy-protected File Phone Book Entry, Schedule Event or Bookmark Forwarded Server Mail Others Multiple Files

The following marks appear on indicators to inform you:

- Folder Contains Unread Messages
- Locked Folder
- Folder with Auto Sort Set
- Protected Message
- Delivery failed to Some Recipients or Some Attachments Deleted
- Delivery Failed/All Attachments Deleted
- Attachment Deleted
- High Priority Message

Tip

- To open/play copy-protected files, save files to Data Folder.
- appears in **Subject** field when Delivery Report is received.



Sorting Messages

Automatically sort incoming/outgoing messages into folders.

- 1 [Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ **Auto-sort** ⇨ ● ▶

- ▶ To Sort by Address
Address sort ⇨ ● ⇨ *Look-up address, Look-up group, Look-up member* or *Enter address* ⇨ ●
- ▶ To Sort by Subject
Subject sort ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter subject ⇨ ●
- ▶ To Sort by Reply Failed or Send Failed
Reply impossible or *Send impossible.* ⇨ ●

Tip

- Only one Inbox folder can be specified for sorting *Reply impossible* messages.
- Only one Outbox folder can be specified for sorting *Send impossible* messages.
- Search addresses from Phone Book, Received Address List or Sent Address List in **Look-up address**.

Canceling Auto Sort

- 1 [Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ **Auto-sort** ⇨ ●
- 2 Select a criterion ⇨ ⇨ **Release** ⇨ ● ▶
 - ▶ To Cancel a Criteria
Release this ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
 - ▶ To Cancel Multiple Criteria
Release selected ⇨ ● ⇨ Select criteria ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
 - ▶ To Cancel All Criteria
Release all ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Prohibiting Access to Messages

Setting Mail Box Lock

- 1 ⇨ **Mail Setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Other settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Mail box lock** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ●
- 2 Select a mail box ⇨ ●
Repeat step 2 to specify other boxes.
- 3

Setting Folder Lock

- 1 [Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ **Folder lock** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
Locked folders are indicated by .

Tip

- Repeat the same procedure to cancel mail box and folder lock.
- Trash box folder can be locked.
- Security Code entry is required to view messages in locked mail boxes and folders.



Storing Messages in Secret Folders

- Set handset to Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand (P. 4-6).
- Unread Messages, S! Mail with Text Unreceived or delivery reports cannot be stored in Secret Folders.

1 [Message List] ⇨ Select a message ⇨ ⇨ **Keep in secret** ⇨

▶ To Store a Message
Keep this ⇨

▶ To Store Multiple Messages
Keep selected ⇨ ⇨ Select a message ⇨ (repeat to select another message) ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

▶ To Store All Messages in a Folder
Keep all ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

Returning Messages in Secret Folders to Ordinary Messages

1 [Folder List] ⇨ **Secret** ⇨

2 Select a message ⇨ ⇨ **Put out** ⇨

▶ To Return a Message
Put out this ⇨ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨

▶ To Return Multiple Messages
Put out selected ⇨ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ Select a message ⇨ (repeat to select another message) ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

▶ To Return All Messages
Put out all ⇨ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

Saving S! Mail Attachments

Saving Image, Video, Melody, Music and Flash® Files

1 [Message] window ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ⇨ **Save Data** ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

2 Select a folder ⇨

■ To Set an Image as Wallpaper, etc.
⇨ **YES** ⇨ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ (⇨ Select a view ⇨ ⇨ Check an image ⇨)

Select **NO** and press when you do not want to set the image.

■ To Set a Melody as Ringtone, etc.
⇨ **YES** ⇨ ⇨ Select an item ⇨
Select **NO** and press when you do not want to set the melody.

Saving an Image Inserted in Text

1 [Message] window ⇨ ⇨ **Save insert image** ⇨

2 Select an image ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ⇨ Select a folder ⇨

■ To Set an Image as Wallpaper, etc.
⇨ **YES** ⇨ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ (⇨ Select a view ⇨ ⇨ Check an image ⇨)

Select **No** and press when you do not want to set the image.

Saving a Phone Book Entry

1 [Message] window ⇨ Select contact information (a phone number, etc.) ⇨ (twice) ⇨ **Phone or USIM** ⇨ ⇨ **New** ⇨

2 Edit each item ⇨

Saving a Schedule Event

1 [Message] window ⇨ Select Schedule data ⇨ (twice)



Saving a Bookmark

- 1 [Message] window → Select a link (URL, etc.) → ● (twice) → Select a destination → ● (→ Select a folder → ●)

Note

- Mail-attached phone book entries, schedule events or bookmarks cannot be saved to *microSD*.

More Features

Advanced

Managing Messages

- Protect a Message
- Move Messages to a Different Folder
- Move Messages to Trash Box
- Delete Messages
- Delete All Read Messages
- Delete All Delivery Reports
- Delete Attached Files
- Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card
- Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card
- Change Message Color
- Add a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Delete a Folder
- Check Number of Saved Messages
- Check Sent/Received Addresses

▶ P. 5-21)

Using Messages

- Edit a Sent Message
- Edit & Send a Draft Message
- Forward a Message
- Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book
- Call a Phone Number in Text
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text
- Access the Internet from a URL in Text
- Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book

- Search for Information by Keyword
- Switch Subject Field Views
- Change Font Size of Messages
- Search for Messages in a Folder
- Sort Messages
- Filter Messages
- Reset Message List View to Default
- Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages
- Open S! Mail Delivery Report

▶ P. 5-23)

Customize

Message View Settings & Others

- Set Message List View
- Play Attached Melodies Automatically
- Set Number of Text Lines to Scroll
- Set Font Size of Text
- Check Mail Settings
- Reset Mail Settings

▶ P. 13-16)

SMS Server Settings

- Change SMS Center Address
- Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address

▶ P. 13-17)



Sending Messages

Start Here

- [Composition] window P. 5-3
- [Text Entry] window P. 5-3
- [Mail Member List] P. 5-4
- [Mail Member] window P. 5-4
- [SMS Composition] window P. 5-5

Composing Messages

Enter Address from Phone Book

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → **To** → ● → **Phonebook** → ● → Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → ● → Select an e-mail address or phone number → ●

Enter Address from Sent/Received Address List

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → **To** → ● → **Sent address** or **Received address** → ● → Select an e-mail address/phone number → ● (twice)
 Alternatively, select **To** and press to open Sent/Received Address List.

Enter Address from Mail Member List

[Composition] window → **To** → ● → **Mail member** → ● → Select a Mail Member list → ●
 All addresses in the selected Mail Member list are entered in the address field.
 You must save addresses to a Mail Member list in advance.

Set To, Cc or Bcc

[Composition] window → **To** → ● → ● → Select an address → → **Change rcv. type** → ● → **To, Cc or Bcc** → ●
 Cc (Carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Cc field are revealed to the other recipients.
 Bcc (Blind carbon copy): S! Mail copies are sent to other addresses. Addresses in the Bcc field are hidden to the other recipients.
 When there is no address in the To field, the message cannot be sent.

Delete an Address

[Composition] window → **To** → ● → ● → Select an address → → **Delete receiver** → ● → **YES** → ●

Insert Header/Signature

[Composition] window → → **Add header** or **Add signature** → ●
 Save header/signature in advance.

Enter My Pictograms

[Text Entry] window → Press and hold → Select a pictogram → ● → → Toggle categories by pressing or .
 Only available for S! Mails.

Delete Text

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → → **Erase message** → ● → **YES** → ●

Change SMS Message to S! Mail

[SMS Composition] window → → **S! Mail conversion** → ●

Sending Messages

Set Priority (S! Mail)

[Composition] window → → **Priority** → ● → **High, Normal** or **Low** → ●



Server Storage Period (SMS)

[SMS Composition] window → → **SMS valid. per.** → → Select a period →

Specify a period the SMS message is stored in the server in case it fails to reach the recipient because the recipient's handset is out of range, etc.

When **None** is set, the SMS message is deleted from the server after it is resent once in a certain period of time.

Check Delivery

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → → **DeliveryReport** or **SMS report req.** → → **ON** or **OFF** →

When **ON** is set, handset receives a delivery report.

Save Messages to Draft

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → → **Save** →

The message is saved to Draft. Messages saved in Draft can be edited and sent at a later time.

Quit Composing and Delete Message

[Composition] window/ [SMS Composition] window → → **Delete** → → **YES** →

Attaching Files

Shoot a Still Image/Video to Attach to S! Mail

[Composition] window → → **Activate camera** → → **Photo mode** or **Movie mode** → → Shoot image/video →

Delete Files Attached to S! Mail

[Composition] window → Select an attached file → → **Delete att. file** or **Del all att. files** → → **YES** →

Mail Member

Edit an Address

[Mail Member] window → Select an address → → Edit address →

Delete Addresses from a Mail Member List

[Mail Member] → Select an address →
● To Select **Delete this**
→ **Delete this** → → **YES** →
● To Select **Delete all**
→ **Delete all** → → Enter Security Code
→ → **YES** →

Edit a Mail Member List Name

[Mail Member List] → Select a Mail Member list → → **Edit member name** → → Edit name →

Reset a Mail Member List Name

[Mail Member List] → Select a Mail Member list → → **Reset member name** → → **YES** →



Advanced Features

Graphic Mail

Add/Edit Text Decoration

[Text Entry] window → → → ●
 → Select beginning of characters → ● →
 Select end of characters → ● → Select
 effects menu → ● → Apply or Change
 effects

Select , press , select YES and then
 press ● to select the entire text.

Undo

[Text Entry] window → → → ●

Preview Graphic Mail

[Text Entry] window → → → ●
 → or to close preview

Cancel All Decoration

[Text Entry] window → → → ●
 → YES → ● (→ ●)

Create Graphic Mail Automatically

[Text Entry] window → Enter text →
 → → ● → to toggle effects →
 ●

Emotion of the message is detected from the
 entered text, and a set of effects that
 matches the emotion is automatically
 applied.

Save Graphic Mail as a Template

[Text Entry] window → Enter text → ● →
 → **Template** → ● → **Save template** →
 ● → YES → ●

Attached files except images inserted in text
 are not included in a template.
 Save up to 45 templates including
 downloads. Delete saved templates as
 needed.

Download Templates

→ **Template** → ● → **Download
 Templates** → ● → YES → ● → Follow
 onscreen instructions

Create Graphic Mail from a Template

→ **Template** → ● → Select a template
 → ● →

Edit a Template

→ **Template** → ● → Select a template
 → ● → → **Edit** → ● → Edit text →
 ● (twice) → YES or NO → ●

Edit Title of a Template

→ **Template** → ● → Select a template
 → → **Edit title** → ● → Edit title → ●

Delete Templates

→ **Template** → ● → Select a template
 → → **Delete** → ●

- To Select *Delete this*
 → *Delete this* → ● → YES → ●
- To Select *Delete selected*
 → *Delete selected* → ● → Select
 templates → ● → → YES → ●
- To Select *Delete all*
 → *Delete all* → ● → Enter Security Code
 → ● → YES → ●



Receiving/Opening Messages

Start Here

- [Message List] P. 5-7
- [Message] window P. 5-7
- [Mail List] P. 5-7

Receiving Messages

Manually Retrieve Messages

- **Check Mail** → ● → **Retrieve New** → ● → Received Result window opens → **Mail** → ● → Select a message → ●
- Press or press and hold **CLEAR** to cancel message retrieval.
- Retrieve messages that were stored on the server while handset was off or out of range.

Checking Messages

Retrieve Complete S! Mail

- [Message List] → Select an S! Mail notification → ● →
- An S! Mail notification is deleted when you retrieve the message text.
- Use this procedure when **Message Download** under **S! Mail Settings** is set to **Manual**.

Delete S! Mail from Server

- [Message List] → Select an S! Mail notification → ● → → **Delete** → ●
- **Notification, Server mail** or **Notifi./Server** → ● → **YES** → ●

Read Out Messages

- [Message] window → → **Read out message** → ●
- Press ● to stop reading.
- Press to end reading.

Check Message Information

- [Message List] → → **Mail info** → ●

Server Message Operations

Update Mail List

- [Mail List] → → **Mail list** → ●

Switch Mail List Views

- [Mail List] → → **List setting** → ● → **Subject, Name** or **Address** → ●

Check Server Message Information

- [Mail List] → Select a message → → **Mail info** → ●

Forward a Server Message

- [Mail List] → Select a message → → **Forward** → ● → **To** → ● → Enter address →

Delete Server Messages

- [Mail List] → Select a message → → **Delete** → ●
- To Select **Delete this** → **Delete this** → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete selected** → **Delete selected** → ● → Select messages → ● → → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete all** → **Delete all** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → **YES** → ●

Check Server Memory Status

- **Check Mail** → ● → **Server Mail** → ● → **Server mail memory** → ●



Managing/Using Messages

Start Here

[Folder List].....	P. 5-12
[Message List].....	P. 5-12
[Message] window.....	P. 5-12
[Inbox Folder List].....	P. 5-13
[Inbox Message List].....	P. 5-13
[Received Message] window.....	P. 5-13
[Sent Message] window.....	P. 5-13

Managing Messages

Protect a Message

[Message] window → → **Protect ON/OFF** →

If a message is protected, this procedure cancels protection.

Move Messages to a Different Folder

[Message List] → → Select a message → → **Move** →

- To Select **Move this**
→ **Move this** → → Select a destination folder → → **YES** →
- To Select **Move selected**
→ **Move selected** → → Select a destination folder → → Select messages → → → **YES** →
- To Select **Move all**
→ **Move all** → → Select a destination folder → → **YES** →

A message can also be moved to a different folder from Message window.

Move Messages to Trash Box

[Message List] → → **Move trash box** → → Select messages → → → **YES** →

Protected messages and delivery reports cannot be moved to Trash box.

Delete Messages

[Folder List] → → **Delete all** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →
[Message List] → → Select a message → → **Delete** →

- To Select **Delete this**
→ **Delete this** → → **YES** →
- To Select **Delete selected**
→ **Delete selected** → → Select messages → → → **YES** →
- To Select **Delete all**
→ **Delete all** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Read Messages

[Inbox Folder List] → → **Delete read** → → **YES** →
[Inbox Message List] window → → **Delete** → → **Delete read** → → **YES** →

Protected messages cannot be deleted.

Delete All Delivery Reports

[Inbox Message List] → → **Delete** → → **Delete all reports** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Protected delivery reports cannot be deleted.



Advanced Features

Delete Attached Files

[Message] window → Select attached files → → **Delete att. file** or **Del all att. files** → ● → YES → ●

Copy SMS Messages between Handset and USIM Card

→ **Tools** → ● → **USIM Operation** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → **Copy** → ● → **Phone** → **USIM** or **USIM** → **Phone** → ● → **SMS** → ● → **Inbox** or **Outbox** → ● → Select a folder → ● → Select an SMS message → ● → → YES → ●

Delete SMS Messages on USIM Card

→ **Tools** → ● → **USIM Operation** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → **Delete** → ● → **USIM** → ● → **SMS** → ● → **Inbox** or **Outbox** → ● → Select a folder → ● → Select an SMS message → ● → → YES → ●

Change Message Color

[Message List] → Select a message → Press and hold → Each time you press and hold , the message color toggles as follows: Red → Blue → Default (Black)

Add a Folder

[Folder List] → → **Add folder** → ● → Enter folder name → ● → YES or NO → ● → (**Address sort, Subject sort, Reply impossible** or **Send impossible.** → ● → Make auto Sort settings →) → YES or NO → ●

Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Edit folder name** → ● → Edit folder name → ● Preinstalled folders cannot be renamed.

Change Order of Folders

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Sort folder** → ● → Select a position → ● The order of preinstalled folders cannot be changed.

Delete a Folder

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → **Delete folder** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → YES → ● Folders containing protected messages and preinstalled folders cannot be deleted. This procedure also deletes messages stored in the folder. Auto Sort settings are also canceled when you delete a folder with Auto Sort settings.

Check Number of Saved Messages

[Folder List] / [Message List] → → **No. of messages** → ● Check number of received messages (all, unread, protected), Quake Alerts (all, unread), and messages on USIM (received, sent).
Folder List: The total of all folders.
Message List: The total of the selected folder.

Check Sent/Received Addresses

Press and hold or press and hold → Select an entry → ●



Using Messages

Edit a Sent Message

[Sent Message] window → → Edit address, subject and/or text

Edit & Send a Draft Message

→ **Draft** → ● → Select a message → ● → Edit address, subject and text →

Forward a Message

[Received Message] window → → **Forward** → ● (→ ●) → Enter address →
 The subject and text can also be edited.
 Files attached to/inserted in S! Mails are also forwarded.

Save Sender, Recipient's E-mail Address or Phone Number to Phone Book

[Message] window → → **Address list** → ● → Select an e-mail address/phone number → → **Save address** → ● → **YES** → ●

- To Save to Handset
 - **Phone** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → ● (twice)) → Edit items → (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●) (→ Enter entry number → ●)
- To Save to USIM Card
 - **USIM** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → ● (twice)) → Edit items → (→ **Overwrite** or **Add** → ●) (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●)

Call a Phone Number in Text

[Message] window → Select a phone number → ● → **Voice phone** or **Video Call** → ● → **Dial** → ●

Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in Text

[Message] window → Select an e-mail address → ● → Compose S! Mail →

Access the Internet from a URL in Text

[Message] window → Select a URL → ● → **YES** → ●

Save Number/Address in Text to Phone Book

[Message] window → Select an e-mail address/phone number → → **Add to phonebook** → ● → **YES** → ●

- To Save to Handset
 - **Phone** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → ● (twice)) → Edit items → (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●) (→ Enter entry number → ●)
- To Save to USIM Card
 - **USIM** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select Phone Book → ● (twice)) → Edit items → (→ **Overwrite** or **Add** → ●) (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●)

Search for Information by Keyword

[Message] window → → **Quick Search** → ● → **Enter keyword** → ● → Enter keyword → ● → Search → ● → Select an item from search results → ●



Switch Subject Field Views

[Message List] ⇨ Press and hold **[#]**

↳ When *Mail list disp.* is set to **2 lines**, view toggles in the order Name → Address.

↳ When *Mail list disp.* is set to **1 line**, or to **1 line+body**, the view cycles as follows:
Subject → Name → Address

Change Font Size of Messages

[Message] window ⇨ Press and hold **[C]**

Search for Messages in a Folder

[Message List] ⇨ **[F]** ⇨ **Search mail** ⇨ ●
⇨ **Search sender**, **Search receiver** or **Search subject** ⇨ ● (⇨ Select a search criterion ⇨ ●) ⇨ Select an address, enter address or subject ⇨ ●

↳ Narrow down search results by repeating the search operation.

↳ This procedure can be combined with *Sort* or *Filter*.

Sort Messages

[Message List] ⇨ **[F]** ⇨ **Sort** ⇨ ● ⇨
Select a criterion ⇨ ●

↳ This procedure can be combined with the *Search mail* or *Filter*.

Filter Messages

[Message List] ⇨ **[F]** ⇨ **Filter** ⇨ ● ⇨

Select a criterion ⇨ ●

↳ This procedure can be combined with *Search mail* or *Sort*.

Return Message List View to Default

[Message List] ⇨ **[F]** ⇨ **Display all** ⇨ ●

↳ This procedure returns the message list view that has been changed by *Search mail*, *Sort* or *Filter* to its original view.

Switch All Unread Messages to Read Messages

[Inbox Message List] ⇨ **[F]** ⇨ **Read all** ⇨
● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Open S! Mail Delivery Report

[Outbox Message] window ⇨ **[F]** ⇨ **Disp. report** ⇨ ●

↳ Only available in Message window of a sent message with a requested delivery report.

Internet



Overview	6-2
Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
PC Site Browser	6-5
PC Site Browser	6-5
Connecting to PC Websites	6-5
Page Operations	6-7
Navigating Pages	6-7
Open Linked Page in Multi Window	6-7
Jumping to Next or Previous Page	6-7
Selecting Links and Other Items	6-8
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	6-10
Using Bookmarks	6-10
Using Saved Pages	6-10
S! Quick News	6-12
Using S! Quick News (Japanese)	6-12
S! Info Channel	6-13
Using S! Info Channel (Japanese)	6-13
Advanced Features	6-15
Connecting to the Internet	6-15
Page Operations	6-16
Bookmarks & Saved Pages	6-18
S! Quick News	6-19
S! Info Channel	6-20

Weather Indicators	6-20
--------------------------	------

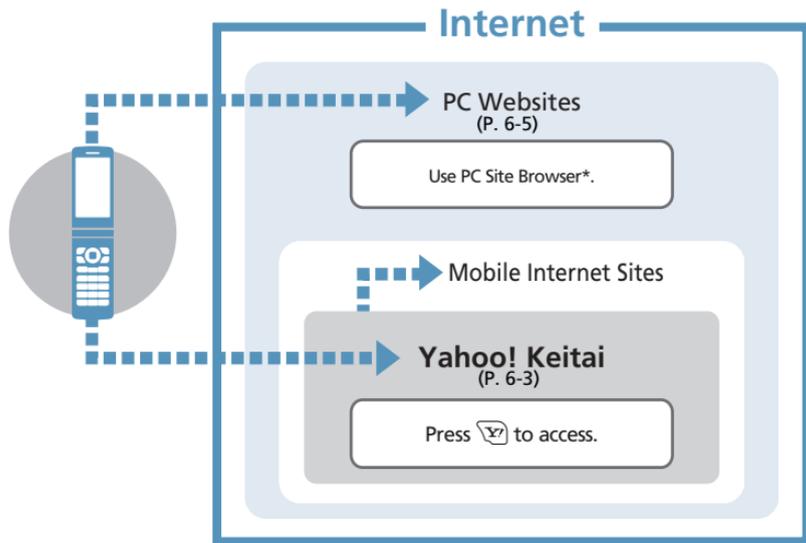
6



Overview

Access the Mobile Internet via Yahoo! Keitai (SoftBank's mobile portal site). Browse PC websites using PC Site Browser.

6
Internet



Transmission & Information Fees
Some web contents automatically connect to different pages incurring transmission fees. Information fees may also apply.

About Security
Handset supports SSL/TLS (encryption protocols for Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information). Root certificates necessary to use SSL/TLS are saved on handset by default.

- SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) and TLS (Transport Layer Security) protocols encrypt data before transmission. Connect via SSL/TLS to safely transmit personal information, credit card numbers and internal corporate information, and guard against eavesdropping, data manipulation, impersonation and other Internet risks.
- When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of SSL/TLS usage. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Japan Co., Ltd., Entrust Japan Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Japan Ltd. and Secom Trust Systems Co., Ltd. cannot be held liable for any damages associated with the use of SSL/TLS.

* When **Warning Messages** is set to **ON**, an alert appears each time handset connects to a website using PC Site Browser.



Connecting to Yahoo! Keitai

1



Web Page

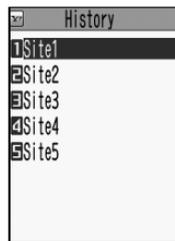
2 Select an item \Rightarrow

Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.

3 to exit the Internet \Rightarrow YES \Rightarrow

Using Access History

1 Press and hold \Rightarrow History/ Enter URL \Rightarrow \Rightarrow History \Rightarrow

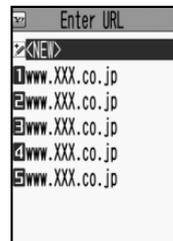


History List

2 Select a record \Rightarrow

Entering URLs

1 Press and hold \Rightarrow History/ Enter URL \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Enter URL \Rightarrow



URL Entry Window

2 <NEW> \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Enter URL \Rightarrow \Rightarrow

Tip

- A confirmation for SSL/TLS communication appears each time a secure page is opened. appears in SSL/TLS compatible pages.
- Some pages require user authentication. Select text entry field and enter your user ID or password.



More Features

Advanced

Yahoo! Keitai

- Switch to PC Site Browser
- Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

(▶ P. 6-15)

History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

(▶ P. 6-15)

Using URL Log

- Use Previously Entered URLs
- Edit Previously Entered URLs
- Send URLs by Mail
- Delete URL Records

(▶ P. 6-15)

Root Certificates

- Check Certificate Details
- Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

(▶ P. 6-16)

Customize

Internet

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number

- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies
- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

(▶ P. 13-18)



PC Site Browser

View PC websites using PC Site Browser. Scroll up, down, left or right to view entire page.

- You may not be able to view as you want depending on the site.
- Note that transmission fees may be expensive for pages with large amounts of data.



PC Site Browser Window

①	Tabs One for each title/URL appears when viewing several pages.
②	Page Toggle Appears when viewing several pages. Toggle pages with .
③	New Window Open link in a new window.

About Page Layout

When using PC Site Browser, two page layout types are available for each of PC Screen and Small Screen:

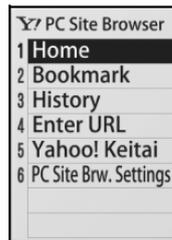
PC Screen: Scroll pages vertically and horizontally.

Small Screen: Scroll pages vertically.

Pages are laid out to fit Display width.

Connecting to PC Websites

- 1 Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒



PC Site Browser Menu

- 2 **Home** ⇒ (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒)
⇒ **Select an item** ⇒
Repeat this step until the page you want to view opens.



Web Page

- 3 to exit the Internet ⇒ **YES** ⇒



Using Access History

1 [PC Site Browser Menu] ⇒ **History**



History List

2 Select a record ⇒ (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒)

Entering URLs

1 [PC Site Browser Menu] ⇒ **Enter URL** ⇒



URL Entry Window

2 <NEW> ⇒ ⇒ Enter URL ⇒
⇒ OK ⇒ (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒)

More Features

Advanced

PC Site Browser

- Switch Page View
- Return to Home

▶ P. 6-15

History

- Save a URL in History to Bookmark
- Check a URL in History
- Delete Records in History

▶ P. 6-15

Using URL Log

- Use Previously Entered URLs
- Edit Previously Entered URLs
- Send URLs by Mail
- Delete URL Records

▶ P. 6-15

Customize

Internet

- Clear Cache
- Delete Cookies
- Initialize Memory Status of Internet
- Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number
- Set Whether to Send Referer
- Enable/Disable Cookies

- Set Whether to Activate Scripts
- Check Internet Settings
- Reset Internet Settings

▶ P. 13-18

PC Site Browser

- Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers

▶ P. 13-19



Navigating Pages

Scrolling Pages

If a page extends beyond view, use to scroll page.

Press or to jump between sections of the page.

Viewing Frames

When a page includes multiple frames, select frames to view.

1 ⇒ Select a frame

2 ⇒ **Frame In** ⇒

Navigate through the frame as you would a page.

To exit frames, press , select **Frame Out** and then press .

Open Linked Page in Multi Window

Open up to five pages simultaneously. Press to toggle pages.

1 [Web Page] ⇒ Select a link ⇒

The linked page appears in a new window.



Multi Window

The page toggles each time you press .

Tip

- To open pages in Multi window other than linked pages:
[Web Page] ⇒ ⇒ **Window Operation** ⇒ ⇒ **Open New Window** ⇒ ⇒ **Bookmark, Enter URL or Yahoo! Keitai** ⇒ ⇒ Specify page to open ⇒
- To close opened pages:
[Multi] window ⇒ ⇒ **Window Operation** ⇒ ⇒ **Close Window** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒
- Use to return to previous pages stored in cache. Return through pages opened in Multi window to close.

Jumping to Next or Previous Page

Once opened pages are stored in a temporary storage area (cache). Press , select **History Back** or **History Forward** and press to go back to the previous page or proceed to the next page, without connecting to the network as long as the pages are stored in the cache.

- Network connection is made when the cache is full.



Selecting Links and Other Items

Operate as follows when buttons and menus appear in web pages.

TOP

-Online Registration-

Terms of Use ①

Name ②

Area ③

Gender Male Female ④

Pursuit Sports Reading Music ⑤

⑥

①	Link Select a link and press to access the linked page.
②	Text Box Select a text box and press to open a text entry window to enter text.
③	Pull-down Menu Select a pull-down menu and press to open a list of options. Use to select an item and press .
④	Radio Button Use and press to select only one item from a range of options. indicates the item is selected.
⑤	Checkbox Use and press to select multiple items from a range of options. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> indicates the item is selected.
⑥	Command Button Select a command button and press to activate the assigned function.

More Features

Advanced

Page Operations

- Reload Page
- Save Images/Melodies in a Page
- Save Background Image of a Page
- Send URL of a Page by Mail
- Call a Phone Number in a Page
- Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page
- Access Another Page from a URL in a Page
- Save Phone Number/E-mail Address to Phone Book
- Search Information by Keyword
- Change Page Font Size
- Zoom Page In/Out
- Jump to Top/End of a Page
- Change Character Code
- Play Flash® from the Beginning
- Check Title, URL and Certificate of a Page
- Show Key Guidance

▶ P. 6-16



Customize

Internet

- Set Scroll Unit/Speed
- Set Whether to Show Images or Play Melodies
(▶ P. 13-18)

Yahoo! Keitai

- Set Font Size
- Set Flash® Sound On/Off
(▶ P. 13-18)

PC Site Browser

- Set Page Layout
(▶ P. 13-19)



Using Bookmarks

Save URLs to Bookmark for quick access.

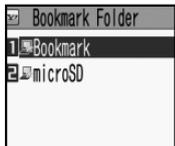
Saving URLs to Bookmark

1 [Web Page] → → **Bookmark**
→ ● → **Add Bookmark** → ● →
YES → ●

2 Select a folder → ●

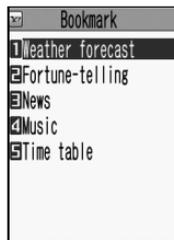
Accessing Pages from Bookmark

1 Press and hold →
▶ From Yahoo! Keitai
Bookmark → ●
▶ From PC Site Browser
PC Site Browser → ● → **Bookmark**
→ ●



Bookmark Folder List

2 Select a folder → ●



Bookmark List

3 Select a bookmark → ● (→ **YES**
or **NO** → ●)

Tip

- To access a bookmarked page from another page:
[Web Page] → → **Bookmark** → ● →
Bookmark List → ● → Select a folder →
● → Select a bookmark → ●

Using Saved Pages

Save a page to Saved Pages to view that page at a later time without incurring connection fees.

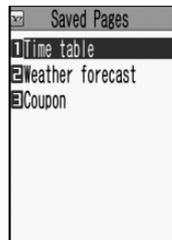
- Only Yahoo! Keitai pages can be saved.
- Viewable content is page as it was saved.

Saving a Page

1 [Web Page] → → **Saved Pages**
→ ● → **Add Saved Pages** → ●
→ **YES** → ●

Opening Saved Pages

1 Press and hold → **Saved Pages** → ●



Saved Pages List



2 Select a page ⇌ ●

Tip

- To open a saved page from another page:
[Web Page] ⇌  ⇌ *Saved Pages* ⇌ ●
⇌ *Saved Pages List* ⇌ ● ⇌ Select a page
⇌ ●

More Features

Advanced

Bookmarks

- Edit a Title
- Edit a URL
- Send a Bookmark by Mail
- Check Number of Bookmarks
- Create a Folder
- Edit a Folder Name
- Change Order of Folders
- Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder
- Delete a Folder
- Delete Bookmarks

▶ P. 6-18)

Saved Pages

- Edit a Title
- Protect Saved Pages
- Check Number of Saved Pages
- Delete Saved Pages

▶ P. 6-19)



Using S! Quick News (Japanese)

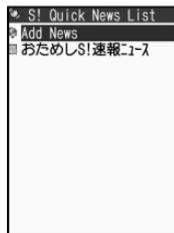
Registered news can be updated automatically and checked from Standby.

- Packet transmission fees are incurred for using S! Quick News.

Registering News

<Example> Register news on S! Quick News List

1



S! Quick News List

2 **Add News** → → **YES** →

3 **Select an item** →

Follow onscreen instructions.

Checking Updated Information

1 **[S! Quick News List]** → **Select an item** →

2 **Select information** →

To check next updated information, press .

More Features

Advanced

S! Quick News

- Manually Update List
- View Descriptions of Registered News
- Delete Registered News/Items

P. 6-19

Customize

S! Quick News

- Set Automatic Updates for S! Quick News
- Hide S! Quick News in Standby
- Set Ticker Speed
- Set Information to appear in S! Quick News
- Hide S! Quick News Images
- Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents

P. 13-19



Using S! Info Channel (Japanese)

This information service automatically receives the latest news, weather and other information.

- Packet transmission fees are incurred for using S! Info Channel/Weather Indicators.

Subscribing for Service

Subscribe by registering to receive service.

- 1 ⇒ **Yahoo! Keitai** ⇒ ⇒ **S! Info Ch./Weather** ⇒



S! Info Channel Menu

- 2 **Register/Cancel** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Continue by following onscreen directions to subscribe.

Checking Latest Information

A Desktop Icon notifies you when new information is received.

- 1 ⇒ **Desktop Icons** ⇒



Web Page

Continue by following onscreen directions. Web page operation is the same as for Yahoo! Keitai.

Tip

- To check from a menu: [S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ *What's New* ⇒
- To check previous information: [S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ *History* ⇒ ⇒ Select a date ⇒ ⇒ Unread or read backnumbers are indicated with or .

Weather Indicators

After subscribing, weather indicators showing current weather appear in Standby.

Weather Indicators

	Clear (Daytime)		Later
	Clear (Night)		Partial
	Cloudy		Pollen (Low)
	Rain		Pollen (High)
	Snow		UV Rays (Low)
	Thunder		UV Rays (High)

<Example> **Cloudy, partial rain**

- For a complete list of indicators, see Appendix (P. 14-19).

Checking Weather Report

- 1 [S! Info Channel Menu] ⇒ **Weather Indicator** ⇒ ⇒ **Weather** ⇒



More Features

Advanced

S! Info Channel

- Receive Previous Unreceivable Information
- Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages
- Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

[▶ P. 6-20](#)

Weather Indicators

- Manually Update Weather Information

[▶ P. 6-20](#)

Customize

S! Info Channel

- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information
- Set Font Size for Web Pages

[▶ P. 13-20](#)

Weather Indicators

- Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information
- Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby
- Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information

[▶ P. 13-20](#)



Connecting to the Internet

Start Here

- [Web Page] P. 6-3, P. 6-5
- [History List] P. 6-3, P. 6-6
- [URL Entry] window P. 6-3, P. 6-6

Yahoo! Keitai

Switch to PC Site Browser

[Web Page] → → **Switch to PC** → ●
→ **YES** → ● (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●)

Open Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

[Web Page] → → **Yahoo! Keitai** → ●

PC Site Browser

Switch Page View

[Web Page] → → **Change Disp. Mode**
→ ●

Page view toggles between PC screen and Small screen. Small screen adjusts width to handset Display.

Return to Home

[Web Page] → → **Home** → ●

History

Save a URL in History to Bookmark

[History List] → Select a record → →
Add Bookmark → ● → **YES** → ● →
Select a folder → ●

Check a URL in History

[History List] → Select a record → →
URL → ●

Delete Records in History

[History List] → Select a record → →
Delete → ●

- To Select **Delete This**
→ **Delete This** → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete Selected**
→ **Delete Selected** → ● → Select records
→ ● → → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete All**
→ **Delete All** → ● → Enter Security Code
→ ● → **YES** → ●

Using URL Log

Use Previously Entered URLs

[URL Entry] window → Select a record →
● → **OK** → ●

Edit Previously Entered URLs

[URL Entry] window → Select a record →
● → Select URL entry field → ● → Edit
URL → ● → **OK** → ●

Send URLs by Mail

[URL Entry] window → Select a record →
 → **Compose Message** → ● → Enter
address, subject and text →
 Composition (S! Mail) window opens with
the URL inserted in the text.



Delete URL Records

[URL Entry] window → Select a record →

→ **Delete** → ●

● To Select *Delete This*

→ *Delete This* → ● → **YES** → ●

● To Select *Delete Selected*

→ *Delete Selected* → ● → Select records

→ ● → → **YES** → ●

● To Select *Delete All*

→ *Delete All* → ● → Enter Security Code

→ ● → **YES** → ●

Root Certificates

Check Certificate Details

→ **Settings** → ● → **Other settings**

→ ● → **Connection Settings** → ● →

Certificate → ● → Select a certificate →



Switch a Certificate between Valid & Invalid

→ **Settings** → ● → **Other settings**

→ ● → **Connection Settings** → ● →

Certificate → ● → Select a certificate →

→ **Valid/Invalid** → ●

This procedure switches a valid certificate to invalid and an invalid one to valid.

Page Operations

Start Here

[Web Page]P. 6-3, P. 6-5

Reload Page

[Web Page] → → **Reload** → ●

Save Images/Melodies in a Page

[Web Page] → → **Save File** → ● (→

Object → ●) (→ Select a file → ●) →

Save → ● → **YES** → ● (→ Select a

folder → ●) (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●)

To play a melody, select *Play* and press ●.

To check file properties, select *Property* and press ●.

Save Background Image of a Page

[Web Page] → → **Save File** → ● (→

Background Image → ●) → **Save** → ●

→ **YES** → ● (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●)

To check file properties, select *Property* and press ●.

Send URL of a Page by Mail

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools**

→ ● → **Compose Message** → ● →

Attach URL → ● → Enter address, subject

and text →

Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted in the text.

Call a Phone Number in a Page

[Web Page] → Select a phone number →

● → **Voice Phone** or **Video Call** → ● →

Dial → ●

Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

Send an S! Mail to an E-mail Address in a Page

[Web Page] → Select an e-mail address →

● → **Compose S! Mail** →

Access Another Page from a URL in a Page

[Web Page] → Select a URL → ●



Save Phone Number/E-mail Address to Phone Book

[Web Page] → Select a phone number/e-mail address → → **Add to Phone Book** → ● → **YES** → ●

- To Save to Handset
 - **Phone** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → ● (twice)) → Edit each item → (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●) (→ Enter entry number → ●)
- To Save to USIM card
 - **USIM** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → ● (twice)) → Edit each item → (→ **Overwrite** or **Add** → ●) (→ **YES** → ●)

Search Information by Keyword

[Web Page] → → **Quick Search** → ●

- To Enter a Keyword
 - **Enter keyword** → ● → Enter keyword → ● → → ● → Select an item from search results → ●
- To Select a Keyword from Previous Entries
 - **History** → ● → Select a keyword → ● → → ● → Select an item from search results → ●

Change Page Font Size

[Web Page] → → **Change Font Size**

- ● → Select a font size → ●
- Only available when the page view is *Small Screen* in PC Site Browser.

Zoom Page In/Out

[Web Page] → → **Zoom** → ● →

- Select a magnification → ●
- Zoom is only available when PC Site Browser is set to *PC Screen*.

Jump to Top/End of a Page

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** →

- → **Head of Sentence** or **End of Sentence** → ●

Change Character Code

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools**

- ● → **Change CHR Code** → ● →
- Select a character code → ●
- Use this procedure when characters of a page are illegible.

Play Flash® from the Beginning

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools**

- ● → **Replay** → ●
- Only available when using Yahoo! Keitai.

Check Title, URL or Certificate of a Page

[Web Page] → → **Convenient Tools** →

- → **Site Info** → ● → **Title, URL** or **Certificate** → ●

Show Key Guidance

[Web Page] → → **Help** → ●

- Only available when using PC Site Browser.



Bookmarks & Saved Pages

Start Here

- [Bookmark Folder List]P. 6-10
- [Bookmark List]P. 6-10
- [Saved Pages List]P. 6-10

Bookmarks

Edit a Title

[Bookmark List] ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨
 ⇨ **Edit Title** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ●

Edit a URL

[Bookmark List] ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨
 ⇨ **Edit URL** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit URL ⇨ ●

Send a Bookmark by Mail

[Bookmark List] ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨
 ⇨ **Compose Message** or **Attach to Mail**
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter address, subject and text
 ⇨

Compose Message: Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the URL inserted at the top of the text.
Attach to Mail: Composition (S! Mail) window opens with the bookmark attached.

Check Number of Bookmarks

[Bookmark Folder List] / [Bookmark List]
 ⇨ ⇨ **No. of Bookmarks** ⇨ ●

The total number of bookmarks can be checked from Bookmark Folder List and the number of bookmarks in a folder can be checked from Bookmark List.

Create a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] ⇨ ⇨ **Add Folder** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter folder name ⇨ ●

Edit a Folder Name

[Bookmark Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨
 ⇨ **Edit Folder Name** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit folder name ⇨ ●

Change Order of Folders

[Bookmark Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨
 ⇨ **Sort Folder** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a position ⇨ ●

The order of Preset folders cannot be changed.

Move Bookmarks to a Different Folder

[Bookmark List] ⇨ Select a bookmark ⇨
 ⇨ **Move** ⇨ ●

- To Select **Move This**
 ⇨ **Move This** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- To Select **Move Selected**
 ⇨ **Move Selected** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ● ⇨ Select bookmarks ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- To Select **Move All**
 ⇨ **Move All** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a destination folder ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Delete a Folder

[Bookmark Folder List] ⇨ Select a folder ⇨
 ⇨ **Delete Folder** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

This procedure also deletes all the bookmarks saved in the folder.



Delete Bookmarks

- To Delete All Bookmarks

[Bookmark Folder List] → → **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

- To Delete Bookmarks in a Folder

[Bookmark List] → Select a bookmark → → **Delete** →

- To Select *Delete This*

→ **Delete This** → → **YES** →

- To Select *Delete Selected*

→ **Delete Selected** → → Select bookmarks → → → **YES** →

- To Select *Delete All*

→ **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Saved Pages

Edit a Title

[Saved Pages List] → Select a saved page → → **Edit Title** → → Edit title →

Protect Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] → Select a saved page

→ → **Protect ON/OFF** →

Use this procedure to toggle saved pages between protected and unprotected.

Check Number of Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] → → **No. of Pages** →

Delete Saved Pages

[Saved Pages List] → Select a saved page → → **Delete** →

- To Select *Delete This*

→ **Delete This** → → **YES** →

- To Select *Delete Selected*

→ **Delete Selected** → → Select saved pages → → → **YES** →

- To Select *Delete All*

→ **Delete All** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Protected Saved Pages cannot be deleted.

S! Quick News

Start Here

[S! Quick News List] P. 6-12

Manually Update List

[S! Quick News List] → Select an item → → **Refresh this** or **Refresh all** → → **YES** →

View Descriptions of Registered News

[S! Quick News List] → Select an item → → **Outline** →

Delete Registered News/Items

[S! Quick News List] → Select an item →

- To Select *Delete this*

→ **Delete this** → → **YES** →

- To Select *Delete all*

→ **Delete all** → → **YES** →

● (twice) → Enter Security Code → (twice)



S! Info Channel

Start Here

[S! Info Channel Menu]P. 6-13

[Web Page]P. 6-13

Receive Previous Unreceivable Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] ⇨ *Get Latest Contents* ⇨ ● ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ●

Store Images/Melodies from Web Pages

[Web Page] ⇨ ⇨ *Save File* ⇨ ● (⇨ Select a file ⇨ ●) ⇨ *Save* ⇨ ● ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ● (⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ●) (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ●)

Select *Play* and press ● to play melody file.

Select *Property* and press ● to check file information.

Add Phone Numbers/Mail Addresses from Web Pages

[Web Page] ⇨ ⇨ *Add to Phone Book* ⇨ ● ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ●

- To Save to Handset
 - ⇨ *Phone* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ● (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ● (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ (⇨ *YES* or *NO* ⇨ ●) (⇨ Enter entry number ⇨ ●)
- To Save to USIM Card
 - ⇨ *USIM* ⇨ ● ⇨ Select store method ⇨ ● (⇨ Search Phone Book ⇨ Select Phone Book ⇨ ● (twice)) ⇨ Edit items ⇨ (⇨ *YES* ⇨ ●)

Weather Indicators

Start Here

[S! Info Channel Menu]P. 6-13

Manually Update Weather Information

[S! Info Channel Menu] ⇨ *Weather Indicator* ⇨ ● ⇨ *Manual Update* ⇨ ● ⇨ *YES* ⇨ ●

Camera



Overview	7-2
Viewfinder Indicators.....	7-3
Switching Cameras.....	7-4
Capturing Still Images	7-5
Capturing Still Images.....	7-5
Recording Videos	7-7
Recording Videos	7-7
Various Features	7-9
Continuous Shooting	7-9
Add Frames to Images	7-9
Auto Timer.....	7-10
Chance Capture	7-10
Recording Only Sound	7-10
Advanced Features	7-12
During Shooting.....	7-12
After Shooting.....	7-12

7



Capture still images and record videos with handset camera.

Capture Still Images/Videos

Wide Range of Image Sizes

Select image size accordingly. Use small sizes for S! Mail attachments and larger sizes for saving high resolution images.

Photo Modes

Select a mode suited to the subject/scene such as Portrait, Scenery, Close-up and Sports mode.

Various Features

Features include:
Auto Timer
Continuous Shooting
Adding Frames
(P. 7-9, P. 7-9)

Chance Capture

Even when video memory becomes full, continue recording video (P. 7-10). The continued portion is saved as a separate file while memory space is created by deleting the original video from the beginning.

- Still images are saved in JPEG format and videos in MPEG4 format.
- Clean the lens with soft cloth. Fingerprints or grime on the lens may result in blurred images.
- Hold handset firmly. Handset movement may blur image. If necessary, place handset on a stable surface and use **Auto Timer**.
- Although Camera is made with high-precision technology, some pixels may appear brighter and some darker.
- Shooting or saving images when handset is warm may affect image quality.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight for an extended period may result in discoloration of photo images.
- Shutter click and Auto Timer tone sound at a fixed volume even in Manner Mode.

Send by S! Mail



Non-SoftBank
Mobile Phones



SoftBank
Handsets



PCs



Viewfinder Indicators

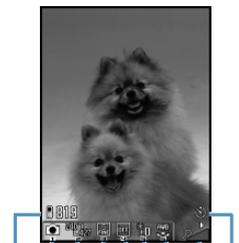
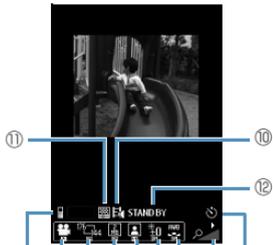


Photo Viewfinder



Video Viewfinder

①	Storage Location (Still Image) Handset Memory Card Storage Capacity (Still Image)¹ White number: 11 or more files Yellow number: 10 or less files Red number: No memory space
②	Storage Location (Video) Handset Memory Card Storage Capacity (Video)¹ Blue: 500 KB or more Yellow: Less than 500 KB Red: No memory space
③	Camera Mode Movie Mode Chance Capture Photo Mode Auto Continuous Shooting Manual Continuous Shooting Voice Mode
④	Image Size (Still Image/Video) · Photo Mode/Continuous Shooting 2M (1200 × 1600) to 20 SubQCIF (128 × 96) · Movie Mode/Chance Capture 320 QVGA (320 × 240) to 960 SubQCIF (128 × 96)

④	Image Quality (Still Image) Super Fine Normal Fine
⑤	File Size (Video) Mail attachment ² Long time Up to 2 MB
⑤	Photo Mode Auto Sports Mode Portrait Night Mode Scenery OFF Close-up
⑥	Brightness -2 to +2
⑦	White Balance³ Auto Light bulb Fine Fluorescent lamp Cloudy
⑧	Auto Timer Auto Timer set
⑨	Zoom (16 steps) Minimum to Maximum
⑩	Movie type (Video) Normal (Video & Voice) Video only Voice only
⑪	Image Quality (Video) Long time Fine Normal Super Fine



12 Recording Status (Video)

STANDBY Recording ready

● REC Recording

- 1 Approximate value.
- 2 Available when **Select Size** is QCIF (176 × 144) or SubQCIF (128 × 96).
- 3 Available only when Photo Mode is set to OFF (in normal and continuous shooting modes).

Close-up Photos

Set Macro Switch to (Macro Lens) and change to close-up mode. In close-up mode, focus will be set on subjects that are 6 cm to 8 cm away from Rear Camera.

Tip

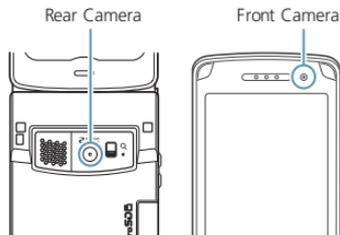
- To save captured still images and videos automatically:

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨

⇨ **Auto save set** ⇨ ⇨ **ON** ⇨

Switching Cameras

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ⇨ **Front Camera** ⇨ ⇨ **Rear Camera** ⇨



Rear Camera

Use for people, animals and scenery. Image appearing on Display appear as seen.

Front Camera

Use to photograph yourself. Image appearing on Display is in mirror display, but the saved image is displayed normally.



Capturing Still Images

Capturing Still Images

1 ⇒ **Camera** ⇒ ⇒ **Photo Mode** ⇒



Photo Viewfinder

2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇒



Photo Preview Window

■ To Discard Image and Return to Viewfinder

⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

3

Tip

- Attach still images to S! Mail or set as wallpaper (P. 7-12).
- Still images are stored in My Picture under Data Folder. See P. 13-23 for details on changing the storage location to Memory Card.

Available Functions

Zoom In	
Zoom Out	
Open Menu	
Toggle Camera Mode	
Select Size	
Quality Setting	
Photo Mode	
Adjust Brightness	
White Balance*	
Help	

* Available when *Photo mode* is set to *OFF*.

7

Camera



More Features

Advanced

During Shooting

- Use Camera Menu
- Switch Color Modes
- Reduce Flicker
- Check Storage Capacity

[▶ P. 7-12](#)

After Shooting

- Send Still Image with Graphic Mail
- Attach Still Image to Mail and Send
- Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image
- Show Shot Still Image in Standby

[▶ P. 7-12](#)

Customize

Camera Settings

- Set Shutter Sound

[▶ P. 13-23](#)

File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Shot Still Images

[▶ P. 13-23](#)



Recording Videos

- 1 ⇒ **Camera** ⇒ ⇒ **Movie Mode** ⇒



Video Viewfinder

- 2 **Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇒ Recording starts.

3



Video Preview Window

Recording ends.

- **To Discard the Recording and Return to Viewfinder**

⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

4

Tip

- Video is saved to *Videos* in Data Folder. The storage location can be changed to memory card (P. 13-23).

Available Functions

Zoom In	
Zoom Out	
Open Menu	
Toggle Camera Mode	
Select Size	
File Size Setting	
Photo Mode	
Adjust Brightness	
White Balance	
Help	

Tip

- Key operation tones may be recorded if you adjust zoom, etc. while recording a video.



More Features

Advanced

During Shooting

- Use Camera Menu
- Set Image Quality
- Switch Color Modes
- Reduce Flicker
- Check Storage Capacity
- Change Video Type

[▶ P. 7-12](#)

After Shooting

- Attach Video to Mail and Send
- Show Recorded Video in Standby
- Edit Title of Video

[▶ P. 7-12](#)

Customize

Video Settings

- Set Shutter Sound

[▶ P. 13-23](#)

File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Shot Videos

[▶ P. 13-23](#)



Continuous Shooting

Shoot up to 20 still images continuously.
 Automatic continuous shooting mode:
 Automatically shoots a set number of images at set intervals after you release the shutter.
 Manual continuous shooting mode:
 Shoots a set number of images, each of which is shot by releasing the shutter manually.

● See P. 13-23 for details on setting interval/number of shots for Continuous Shooting.

- 1** [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] → → or → ●



Continuous Shooting Viewfinder (Manual)

- 2** Frame image in Viewfinder → ●



Thumbnail Preview Window

- To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder
 → → YES → ●

- 3** Press and hold → Save or Mirror save → ●

Tip

- Image size can only be set to CIF, Screen, QVGA V., QCIF or SubQCIF.

Add Frames to Images

- 1** [Photo Viewfinder] → → Select frame → ● → Select a folder → ● → Select a frame → ●

- 2** Compose image in the frame → ●



Framed Image Preview Window

- To Discard Shot Images and Return to Viewfinder
 → → YES → ●

- 3** ●



Auto Timer

- Auto Timer returns to *OFF* after shooting.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder]** ⇒ ⇒ **Auto timer** ⇒ ●
 - 2 ON** ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter time ⇒ ●
 - 3 Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇒ ●▶
Auto Timer starts countdown, and Illumination flashes blue. About five seconds before shooting, a countdown tone sounds and Illumination flashes rapidly.
To stop Auto Timer, press or .
- ▶ **For Still Images**
●
 - ▶ **For Videos**
● (twice)

Tip

- To shoot manually during Auto Timer countdown, press ●.

Chance Capture

Continue recording video even when memory is full.

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder]** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ●
- 2 Frame image in Viewfinder** ⇒ ●
Recording starts.
When the available recording time is over, the remaining time indication flashes.
- 3 ● (twice)**

Note

- When recorded video exceeds available memory, handset saves the maximum recordable time from the end of recording. Initial portion is deleted.

Recording Only Sound

Record only audio in Movie Mode (Voice Mode).

- 1 [Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder]** ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ ●
- Recording starts.
- (twice)

Tip

- To activate Voice Mode from Main Menu:
 ⇒ Camera ⇒ ● ⇒ Voice Mode ⇒ ●



More Features

Advanced

After Shooting

- View Images
- Save One Frame
- Save Only Selected Images
- Save as Animation
- Open an Image as Mirror Image
- Send an Image with Graphic Mail
- Attach to Mail
- Change Frame before Saving Image

[▶ P. 7-12](#)

Customize

Camera Settings

- Set Interval for Continuous Shooting
- Set Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting

[▶ P. 13-23](#)

File Storage

- Set Storage Location for Still Images/Videos

[▶ P. 13-23](#)



During Shooting

Start Here

- [Photo Viewfinder] P. 7-5
- [Video Viewfinder] P. 7-7

Use Camera Menu

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder]
 ⇨ ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ●

Set Image Quality

[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ⇨ **Quality setting** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ●

Switch Color Modes

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨
 ⇨ **Camera Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Color mode set** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Normal, Sepia** or **Monochrome** ⇨ ●

Reduce Flicker

[Photo Viewfinder] / [Video Viewfinder]
 ⇨ ⇨ **Camera Settings** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Flicker**
 ⇨ ● ⇨ **Auto, Mode 1 (50Hz)** or **Mode 2 (60Hz)** ⇨ ●

Check Storage Capacity

[Photo Viewfinder]/[Video Viewfinder] ⇨
 ⇨ **Memory info** ⇨ ●

Change Video Type

[Video Viewfinder] ⇨ ⇨ **Movie type set** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Normal, Video** or **Voice** ⇨ ●

After Shooting

Start Here

- [Photo Preview] window.....P. 7-5
- [Video Preview] window.....P. 7-7
- [Thumbnail Preview] window.....P. 7-9
- [Framed Image Preview] window.....P. 7-9

Send Still Image with Graphic Mail

[Photo Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Insert image** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Insert mail** or **SubQCIF scale down** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Create Graphic Mail** ⇨

Attach Still Image/Video to Mail and Send

[Photo Preview] window/ [Video Preview] window ⇨ (⇨ **Attach image** ⇨ ●) (⇨ **Attach mail** or **QVGA scale down** ⇨ ●) ⇨ **Compose S! Mail** ⇨
 You may not be able to upload depending on video image size.

Show Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Mirror display** ⇨ ●

Save Mirror Image of Shot Still Image

[Photo Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Mirror save** ⇨ ●

Show Shot Still Image in Standby

[Photo Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Set as display** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Stand-by display** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a layout ⇨ ● ⇨ **Check preview** ⇨ ●

Show Recorded Video in Standby

[Video Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Set as stand-by** ⇨ ●



Advanced Features

Edit Title of Video

[Video Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Edit title** ⇨ ● ⇨ Edit title ⇨ ●

View Images

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ Select an image ⇨

Press to switch to the previous/next image.

Save One Frame

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ● ⇨ ⇨ **Save** or **Mirror save** ⇨ ●

Save Only Selected Images

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ ● ⇨ Repeat the same step ⇨ ⇨ **Save** or **Mirror save** ⇨ ●

Select a checked image and press ● to cancel the selection.

Save as Animation

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Store all&anime** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Save** or **Mirror save** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a destination ⇨ ●

Open an Image as Mirror Image

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Mirror display** or **Normal display** ⇨ ●

Send an Image with Graphic Mail

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ (twice) ⇨ **Insert image** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Insert mail** or **SubQCIF scale down** ⇨ ● ⇨ Create Graphic Mail ⇨

Attach to Mail

[Thumbnail Preview] window ⇨ Select an image ⇨ (twice) ⇨ **Attach image** ⇨ ● (⇨ **Attach mail/QVGA scale down** ⇨ ●) ⇨ Compose S! Mail ⇨

Change Frame before Saving Image

[Framed Image Preview] window ⇨ ⇨ **Change frame** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a frame ⇨ ● (twice)

TV



About TV	8-2
Initial Setup	8-3
TV Windows.....	8-4
Watching TV	8-5
Data Broadcasts (Japanese)	8-6
Program Guide	8-6
Recording/Playing Programs	8-8
Recording Programs.....	8-8
Playing Recorded Programs.....	8-8
View/Record Timer	8-10
Setting View Timer.....	8-10
Setting Record Timer	8-10
Advanced Features	8-12
Channel Settings	8-12
Watching TV	8-12
Data Broadcasts.....	8-13
TV Link	8-13
Recording Programs.....	8-13
Playing Programs.....	8-14
View/Record Timer	8-14

8



About TV

Handset supports One Seg Digital TV for cellular phones.

- One Seg is available only in Japan.

One Seg

One Seg is a digital TV broadcasting service for mobile devices. It uses one segment of the terrestrial digital band for TV and data broadcasts that you enjoy at home, on your handset.



Watch TV in
Widescreen

Data Broadcasts

Enjoy data broadcasts while watching TV. Access program-related information and even participate in the program (P. 8-6).

Record Programs

Record a program on memory card while viewing it and enjoy it again at a later time (P. 8-8).

View and Record Timer

Book programs you want to view/record. Program Guide can be used for booking programs (P. 8-10).

Quick Info

Sender and subject information appears for new message while TV is active (P. 13-4).

Precautions

- Never watch TV while riding a bicycle, motorcycle or driving a car. You may not hear the sounds around you clearly, or TV image/sound may distract you creating the risk of accident. Even while walking, pay attention to the traffic around you. Be especially careful at railway crossings and pedestrian crosswalks.
- TV image/sound may be affected if a call or message is received while watching TV.
- TV information (TV links or data you entered in Data Broadcast Mode) saved on handset cannot be transferred to another handset when you change your handset to another model or when it is repaired. Keep a memo of necessary information.
- TV is available when USIM Card is inserted and with a valid SoftBank contract.
- TV antenna is built into handset. If screen quality is poor, change handset position or move it away from body to improve screen quality.



About TV

- TV image/sound may deteriorate or signal reception may become impossible in the following areas:
 - Areas far from signal towers
 - Mountain areas or places beside tall buildings
 - In tunnels, underground malls or buildings with a lot of signal obstructions
- For more information on One Seg services, visit the following website:
The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting
From PC: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/>
From handset: <http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/>
(Japanese)

When You First Activate TV

The first time you activate TV, the following information appears.

- How to switch between Portrait and Landscape View
 - Functions unavailable in Landscape View
- Read information then press **●**, select **YES**, and press **●**. If **NO** is selected, information no longer appears when activating TV.

Initial Setup

Configure channel settings for your area and save stations to a channel list.

1 ⇒ **TV/Music** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **TV** ⇒ **●**
⇒ **Channel Settings** ⇒ **●**

2 **Select Area** ⇒ **●** ⇒ **Select area**
⇒ **●** ⇒ **Select prefecture/city** ⇒
● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **●**

Stations for the area are saved to a channel list.

Tip

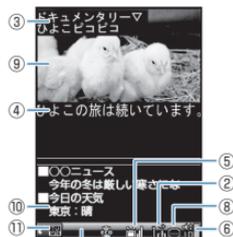
- If signals from stations of the selected area are difficult to receive, search for stations using the *Automatic* option.



TV Windows



Landscape View



Portrait View

①	Quick Info Information about messages received while watching TV appears in tickers (P. 13-4).
②	Channel (Remote Control No.)
③	Program Title
④	Subtitles
⑤	Signal Strength Strong Moderate Weak Out of Broadcasting Area
⑥	Volume
⑦	TV Power Saving TV Power Saving ON
⑧	Receiving Subtitle Information Subtitles Available
⑨	Image
⑩	Data Broadcast
⑪	TV View Mode Image Mode Data Broadcast Mode

More Features

Advanced

Channel Settings

- Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically
- Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List
- Switch Channel Lists

▶ P. 8-12

Customize

Channel List

- Change Title of Channel List
- Delete a Channel List
- Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers
- Delete a Channel

▶ P. 13-21

Other Settings

- Check TV Settings
- Reset Channel Settings
- Clear Data Broadcast Memory
- Reset TV Settings

▶ P. 13-22



Watching TV

- 1 **MENU** → **TVIMusic** → **TV** → **Watch TV**



TV Window

- 2 **Use Keypad to select a channel**
Press **[*]** for channel 10, **[0]** for channel 11, and **[#]** for channel 12.

- 3 **[Left Arrow]** or press and hold **[CLEAR]** to end TV → **YES** → **TV**
Follow the same step to end TV in Portrait view.

Tip

- TV volume is "0" when Manner Mode is active and no earphone is connected. Adjust with **[Volume Up]**.

Available Functions

Change Channel in Order	[Channel Up]
Automatically Search for Receivable Channels	Press and hold [Search] • Press [Enter] or [CLEAR] to stop search
Adjust Volume	[Volume Up] or press and hold [Volume Up]
	[7-9] or [MUSIC]
	Press and hold [7-9] or press and hold [MUSIC]
Mute	[CLEAR]
Toggle Portrait and Landscape	[TV] or press and hold [9]
Show/Hide Subtitles ¹	Press and hold [Subtitles]
Toggle Windows ²	Press and hold [Windows] Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast
Switch to Data Broadcast Mode ²	[Windows]

- 1 Available in Landscape View.
2 Available in Portrait View.

When a Call Arrives While Watching TV

When a call arrives or when Alarm or Schedule Alarm is activated while watching TV, TV is interrupted to receive the call, etc. TV resumes after the interrupting function ends.



Data Broadcasts (Japanese)

Data broadcasts are available while watching TV in Portrait view. Access various kinds of program-related and other information in Data Broadcast Mode.

1 [TV] window ⇨



Data Broadcast Mode Window

Data Broadcast Mode is activated.

2 Select a link ⇨

When a confirmation asking whether to connect to the Internet appears, select **YES** and press . The confirmation will not appear again.

Available Functions

Select a Link	
Confirm Selection of a Link	
Switch Pages	
Previous Page	
Toggle Windows	Press and hold Windows toggle as follows: Data Broadcast → Image & Data Broadcast → Image & Subtitles & Data Broadcast
Switch to TV Mode	

Note

- Viewing data broadcast information requires no fees. However, accessing Internet links will incur transmission fees.
- Data broadcasts are unavailable in Landscape view.

Program Guide

- Use Program Guide to set timer to record/activate programs.

1 ⇨ TV/Music ⇨ ⇨ TV ⇨ ⇨ Program Guide ⇨

See Program Guide help for further operations.

Before first using Program Guide, configure initial settings and agree to the terms of use. Follow the onscreen instructions.



More Features

Advanced

Watching TV

- Show Program Information
- Adjust Brightness
- Switch Main & Sub Audio
- Switch Audio Channels
- Show Current Channel List Information
- Add Current Station to Channel List
- Select a Program

[▶ P. 8-12](#)

Data Broadcasts

- Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast
- Check Certificate for SSL Page
- Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

[▶ P. 8-13](#)

TV Link

- Save TV Links
- Access Pages/Information from TV Links
- Show Details of a TV Link
- Show Number of Saved TV Links
- Delete TV Links

[▶ P. 8-13](#)

Customize

Image & Sound

- Set Subtitle Display
- Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View
- Save Battery by Dimming Backlight
- Set Sound On While Handset Closed
- Keep Backlight On When Viewing TV
- Set Backlight Duration for Viewing TV

[▶ P. 13-21](#)

Data Broadcasts

- Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts
- Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts
- Show Confirmation Window Again

[▶ P. 13-22](#)



Recording Programs

TV programs can be recorded on memory card while you are watching them.

- Data broadcasts are not saved with recording.

1 [TV] window ⇨ **Press and hold**

Recording starts.

■ **To Capture a Still Image**
⇨

Captured still images are saved to TV folder in Data Folder.

2

Recording ends.

■ **When Memory Becomes Full**
Recording ends and the recorded portion is saved.

Note

- The channel remains fixed during recording.
- Recording certain programs is restricted. If a restriction is activated while recording a program, recording automatically ends, and the part that has been recorded so far is saved.
- When appears to indicate handset is out of the broadcasting area, recording is paused. When the signal strength recovers to weak or better, recording automatically resumes.
- Recording continues even with handset closed, but signal reception may be poor.
- Recordings that you make are for personal use only. Other uses require the permission of the copyright holder.

Playing Recorded Programs

1 ⇨ **Data Folder** ⇨ ⇨ **TV** ⇨

2 **Video** ⇨ ⇨ **microSD** ⇨



Recorded Program List

■ **To View Captured Still Images**

⇨ **Image** ⇨ ⇨ **Select a folder** ⇨



Recording/Playing Programs

3 Select a file → ●



Recorded Program Playback Window

■ To Stop Playback



Tip

- If a program was stopped partway through, resume playback from that point. Select **YES** and press ●.

Available Keys during Program Playback

Pause/Play	
Adjust Volume	or press and hold
	or press and hold or press and hold
Mute	
Fast Play ¹	
Frame Forward	during pause
Skip Ahead 30 Seconds ²	Press and hold
Skip Back 30 Seconds ²	Press and hold
Toggle Portrait and Landscape View	or press and hold
Show/Hide Subtitles	Press and hold

- 1 Toggle normal and fast play.
- 2 Available when recorded program is 30 seconds or more.

More Features

Advanced

Recording Programs

- Edit Title of a Recorded Program
- Reset Title of a Recorded Program
- Switch Views of Recorded Program List
- Check Information on a Recorded Program
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Delete Recorded Programs

▶ P. 8-13

Playing Programs

- Specify Point to Start Playback

▶ P. 8-14

Customize

Recording Programs

- Continue/End Recording at Low Battery

▶ P. 13-22



Setting View Timer

- 1 ⇒ **TV/Music** ⇒ ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **List** ⇒ ⇒ **Booking Program List** ⇒



Booking Program List

8

TV

- 2 ⇒ **New** ⇒



View Timer Setting Window

- 3 ⇒ ⇒

- ▶ To Enter Date Manually
Enter date ⇒ ⇒ Enter date and time ⇒
- ▶ To Select a Date from Calendar
Choose date ⇒ ⇒ Select a date ⇒ ⇒ Enter time ⇒

- 4 ⇒ ⇒ **Select a channel** ⇒

- 5 ⇒ ⇒ **ON, ON/Set time or OFF** ⇒ (⇒ **Select a time** ⇒)

- 6

Note

- Set a timer start date and time that is more than one minute from the present time.

When the Set Time Comes

The alarm sounds for about five minutes, and the start date and time, channel, program title and animation appear in Display. Press any key to stop the alarm tone.

Setting Record Timer

- 1 ⇒ **TV/Music** ⇒ ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **List** ⇒ ⇒ **Timer Recording List** ⇒



Timer Recording List

- 2 ⇒ **New** ⇒



Record Timer Setting Window



View/Record Timer

3 ⇨ ⇨

Enter date and time to start/end recording.

▶ **To Enter Date Manually**

Enter date ⇨ ⇨ Enter date and time to start and end recording ⇨

▶ **To Select a Date from Calendar**

Choose date ⇨ ⇨ Select a date ⇨ ⇨ Enter time ⇨

4 ⇨ ⇨ **Select a channel** ⇨

5 ⇨ ⇨ **ON or OFF** ⇨

6 (⇨ **YES or YES (confirm once)**) ⇨

Note

- Set a timer start date and time that is more than one minute from the present time.

When the Set Time Comes

One minute before the recording start time, the alarm sounds for about two seconds. After the start date and time, end date and time, channel, program title and animation appear in Display, TV activates. Then, recording starts at the set start time.

More Features

Advanced

View/Record Timer

- Select a Timer Alarm Tone
- Enter Title of Booked Program
- Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer
- Set Timer Alarm Volume
- Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window
- Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active
- Edit View/Record Timer Settings
- Change Order of Booked Programs
- Delete Booked Programs
- Check Volume of Recorded Programs
- Check Result of Timer Recording

▶ P. 8-14



Channel Settings

Save Stations to a Channel List Automatically

MENU → **TV/Music** → ● → **TV** → ● → **Channel Settings** → ● → **Automatic** → ● → **YES** → ● → **YES** → ● → Enter title → ●

When a Remote Control Number applies to two or more channels, select an area manually.

Save Stations of a Different Area to a Channel List

MENU → **TV/Music** → ● → **TV** → ● → **Channel List** → ● → **Not Stored** → **TR** → **Channel Settings** → ● → **Select Area** → ● → Select area → ● → Select prefecture/city → ● → **YES** → ●

Switch Channel Lists

MENU → **TV/Music** → ● → **TV** → ● → **Channel List** → ● → Select a channel list → ●

Watching TV

Start Here

[TV] window.....P. 8-5

Show Program Information

[TV] window → **TR** → **Program Info** → ●

Adjust Brightness

[TV] window → **TR** → **Display Setting** → ● → **Brightness** → ● → Select a level → ●

Switch Main & Sub Audio

[TV] window → **TR** → **Sound** → ● → **Main/Sub Sound** → ● → Select an audio output option → ●

Switch Audio Channels

[TV] window → **TR** → **Sound** → ● → **Sound Switch** → ● → Select an audio channel → ●

Sound Switch is available when there is more than one audio channel.

Show Current Channel List Information

[TV] window → **TR** → **Channel** → ● → **Channel Info** → ●

Add Current Station to Channel List

[TV] window → **TR** → **Channel** → ● → **Add Channel** → ● → **YES** → ●

This function is useful when you find new stations via auto-search (press and hold).

Select a Program

[TV] window → **TR** → **Channel** → ● → **Tune Service** → ● → Select a service (program) → ●

Tune Service is available when more than one service (program) is broadcast from the same station.



Data Broadcasts

Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] window P. 8-6

Reload Page Accessed from Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window → → **Data Broadcast** → ● → **Reload Contents** → ●

Check Certificate for SSL Page

[Data Broadcast Mode] window → → **Data Broadcast** → ● → **Show Certificate** → ●

Exit Page and Return to Data Broadcast

[Data Broadcast Mode] window → → **Data Broadcast** → ● → **Back to Data BC** → ●

TV Link

Start Here

[Data Broadcast Mode] window P. 8-6

Save TV Links

[Data Broadcast Mode] window → Select an item → ● (→ **YES** or **YES (By default)**) → ●

Some TV links may have expiration dates.

Access Pages/Information from TV Links

→ **TV/Music** → ● → **TV** → ● → **TV Link** → ●

Types of TV links are indicated by the following icons:

- Memo information
- Data broadcast site
- Internet content

Show Details of a TV Link

→ **TV/Music** → ● → **TV** → ● → **TV Link** → ● → Select a TV link → → **Display detail** → ●

Show Number of Saved TV Links

→ **TV/Music** → ● → **TV** → ● → **TV Link** → ● → → **No. of TVlink** → ●

Delete TV Links

→ **TV/Music** → ● → **TV** → ● → **TV Link** → ● → Select a TV link →

- To Select **Delete This**
→ **Delete This** → ● → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete selected**
→ **Delete selected** → ● → Select a TV link → ● → Repeat step of selecting TV link → → **YES** → ●
- To Select **Delete All**
→ **Delete All** → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → **YES** → ●

Recording Programs

Start Here

[Recorded Program List] P. 8-8

Edit Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] → Select a program → → **Edit title** → ● → Edit title → ●

Reset Title of a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] → Select a program → → **Initialize title** → ● → **YES** → ●



Switch Views of Recorded Program List

[Recorded Program List] ⇨ ⇨ **Switch list** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Title** or **Title + image** ⇨ ●

Check Information on a Recorded Program

[Recorded Program List] ⇨ Select a program ⇨ ⇨ **Show info** ⇨ ●

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] ⇨ ⇨ **Check memory** ⇨ ●

Delete Recorded Programs

[Recorded Program List] ⇨ Select a program ⇨

- To Select **Delete this**
⇨ **Delete this** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- To Select **Multiple-choice**
⇨ **Multiple-choice** ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a file ⇨ ● (repeat to select another file) ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●
- To Select **Delete all**
⇨ **Delete all** ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Playing Programs

Start Here

[Recorded Program Playback] windowP. 8-9

Specify Point to Start Playback

[Recorded Program Playback] window ⇨ ⇨ ⇨ **Location** ⇨ ● ⇨ to specify point ⇨ ●

View/Record Timer

Start Here

[Booking Program List] P. 8-10
 [View Timer Setting] window P. 8-10
 [Timer Recording List] P. 8-10
 [Record Timer Setting] window P. 8-10

Select a Timer Alarm Tone

[View Timer Setting] window ⇨ ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ● (⇨ Select a sub folder ⇨ ●) ⇨ Select an alarm tone ⇨ ●

Enter Title of Booked Program

[View Timer Setting] window / [Record Timer Setting] window ⇨ ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter program title ⇨ ●

Set Regular Activation of View or Record Timer

[View Timer Setting] window / [Record Timer Setting] window ⇨ ⇨ ● ⇨ **1 time, Daily or Select day** ⇨ ●

When **Select Day** is specified, select days of the week and press .

Set Timer Alarm Volume

[View Timer Setting] window / [Record Timer Setting] window ⇨ ⇨ ● ⇨ to adjust volume ⇨ ●

Activate TV Directly from Timer Alarm Notification Window

[View Timer Setting] window ⇨ ⇨ ● ⇨ **ON** or **OFF** ⇨ ●

When **ON** is set, press ● twice, select **YES** and press ● from Alarm Notification window to activate TV and watch the booked program.



Set Priority at Recording Start Time When a TV & Music Group Function is Active

[Record Timer Setting] window
 ● **Recording** or **Operation preferred**

When **Recording** is set, the function in operation is interrupted/ended, and recording starts. When **Operation preferred** is set, a confirmation asking to start recording appears.

Edit View/Record Timer Settings

[Booking Program List] / [Timer Recording List] Select a booked program
 Edit each item

Change Order of Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] / [Timer Recording List] **Sort** Select a criterion

Delete Booked Programs

[Booking Program List] / [Timer Recording List] Select a program **Delete** ●

- To Select **Delete this** **Delete this** ● **YES** ●
- To Select **Delete selected** **Delete selected** ● Select programs ● Repeat step of selecting programs **YES** ●
- To Select **Delete all** **Delete all** ● Enter Security Code ● **YES** ●

Select **Delete past** to delete old bookings.

Check Volume of Recorded Programs

[Timer Recording List] **Memory info** ●

Check Result of Timer Recording

TV/Music ● **TV** ● **List** ● **Result Timer Rec** ● Select an entry ●

Press ● to play the recorded program.

Music Player & S! Appli



About Music Player	9-2
Playback Windows	9-3
Downloading Music	9-4
Music Playback.....	9-5
Playing Music.....	9-5
Using Playlists	9-6
S! Appli.....	9-8
About S! Appli.....	9-8
Downloading S! Appli.....	9-8
Activating S! Appli	9-8
Advanced Features	9-10
Music Player.....	9-10
S! Appli	9-11

9

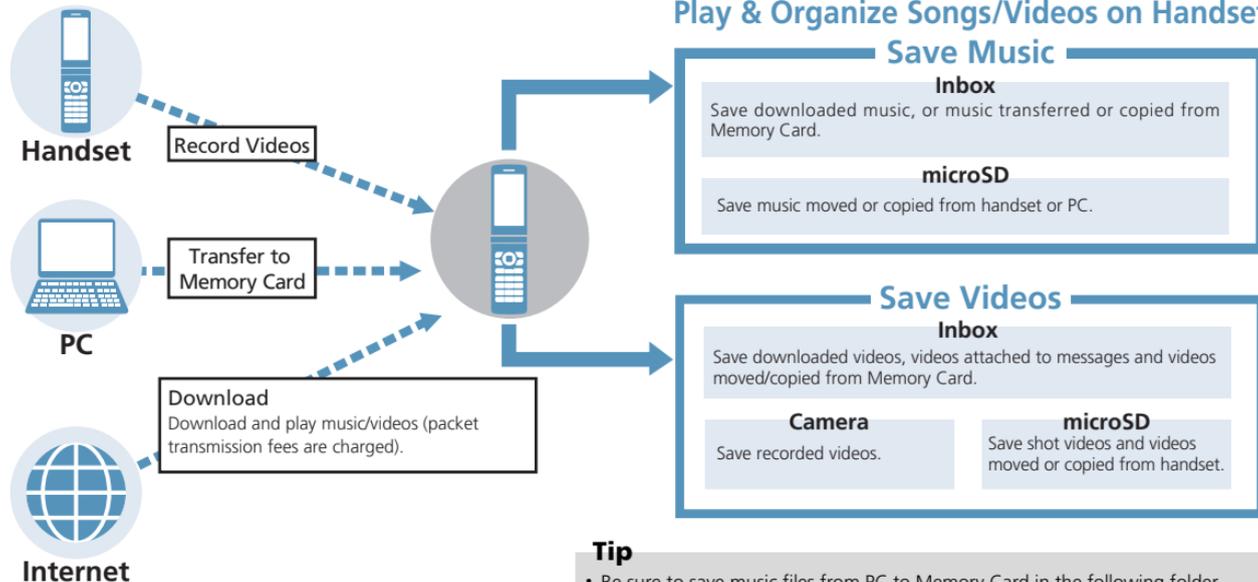


About Music Player

Use Music Player to play and organize songs on handset.

- Access the Internet to download music.
- Also play videos with Music Player.
- Some files are unplayable depending on their format.

- Fully charge battery beforehand. Play unavailable on low charge, even when is pressed and held with handset closed.
- Alarm notification, received calls, etc. while playing music will pause play. For videos, select the same video to resume watching.



Tip

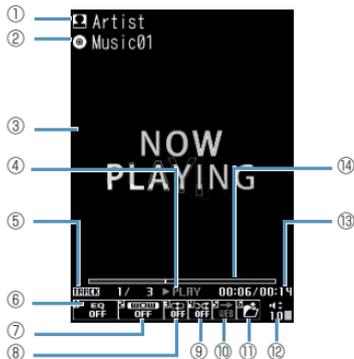
- Be sure to save music files from PC to Memory Card in the following folder.
 ¥PRIVATE¥MYFOLDER¥My Items¥Music



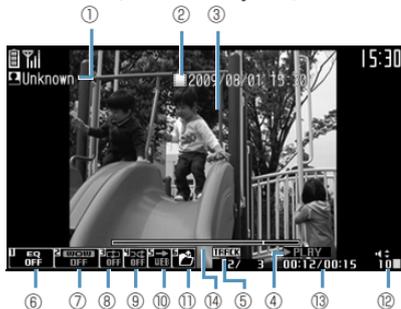
About Music Player

Playback Windows

Normal Screen Mode



Full Screen Mode (For Video Playback)



①	Artist Name <Creator> ¹
②	Title
③	Playback Image
④	Playback Status ▶PLAY Play ⏸PAUSE Pause ⏩FF Fast Forward ⏪REW Rewind ▶SLOW Slow Play ² ⏮PLAY Fast Play ²
⑤	Current Track/Total Tracks in Folder (Current File Number/Total Files in Folder)
⑥	Equalizer EQ OFF OFF Bass Bass / Treble Treble Treble Reducer Treble Reducer Pop Jazz Rock Techno Classical For each genre of music Speed For audio playback
⑦	Sound Effect (WOW) OFF (WOW) (WOW) (WOW) Bass correction (WOW) (WOW) Surround (WOW) (WOW) (WOW) Bass correction/surround (WOW) (WOW) (WOW) User settings
⑧	Repeat Mode OFF OFF Repeat All ³ Repeat One ³
⑨	Shuffle Mode ON ³ OFF

⑩	To Web Connect to the URL in the song.
⑪	Song/file Selection
⑫	Volume
⑬	Elapsed Playback Time/Total Playback Time
⑭	Playback Position ⏮ indicates the current playback position. Use ⏮ to move playback position during pause.

- 1 Descriptions in < > apply to video playback.
- 2 Only available when playing videos.
- 3 Only available when playing music.



Downloading Music

- Check the fees, expiration date, etc. on the download site.

1  ⇒ *TVIMusic* ⇒  ⇒ *Music* ⇒  ▶

▶ To Select from a Genre and Download

Download Music ⇒  ⇒ *YES* ⇒ 

▶ To Search for Music and Download
Search Music ⇒  ⇒ *YES* ⇒ 

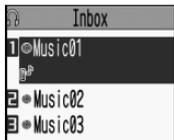
2 Follow onscreen instructions



Playing Music

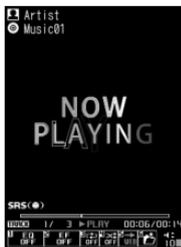
1 ⇒ **TV/Music** ⇒ ⇒ **Music** ⇒

2 Select a folder ⇒



Song List

3 Select a song ⇒



Music Player Playback Window
(Video Player Playback Window)

Tip

- Alternatively, in Standby, press and hold to start Music Player. Play resumes from where it was paused last.
- To play videos downloaded or recorded with camera:
 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Videos** ⇒
 ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ⇒ Specify a video to play
- When video is about to be played the first time, a confirmation appears asking whether to play video in Full Screen Mode all the time. Select **YES** or **NO** and press . Confirmation no longer appears.

Available Keys during Playback

While Handset is Open

Pause/Play	
Adjust Volume	or press and hold
	or
Play from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video	or press and hold
Play Next Song/Video	or press and hold

Rewind	Press and hold
Fast Forward	Press and hold
Move Playback Position	during pause
Open/Close Menu	
Select a Song/File	or [6]
Set Equalizer ¹	[1]
Set Sound Effect ¹	[2]
Set Repeat Mode ¹	[3]
Set Shuffle Mode ¹	[4]
Access the Internet	[5]
Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen ²	[9]
End Playback	[CLEAR]

- 1 The setting toggles each time you press the key.
 2 Available when playing videos.



While Handset is Closed

Adjust Volume	77- Or Music
Playing from Beginning Play Previous Song or Video	Press and hold 77-
Play Next Song/Video	Press and hold Music

Using Playlists

Use playlists to play songs by genre or by artist, or gather your favorite songs and arrange them in your favorite order.

- Songs saved on memory card can also be added to playlists.

Creating a Playlist

- 1 ⇒ **TVIMusic** ⇒ ⇒ **Music** ⇒ ⇒ **Playlist** ⇒



Playlist Window

- 2 ⇒ **Create playlist** ⇒

- 3 **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a song** ⇒
Repeat this step to specify other songs.

- 4 **When all songs are specified** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter playlist name** ⇒

Playing a Playlist

- 1 **[Playlist] window** ⇒ **Select a playlist** ⇒

To play a playlist from the beginning, select a playlist and press .



Playlist Song List

- 2 **Select a song** ⇒
Songs play back in the listed order.

Tip

- To play all songs, select **All tracks(phone)** in Playlist window and press (twice).

More Features

Advanced

Playing Music/Video

- Resume Playback
- Use Menu
- File Information
- Repeat
- Set Preferred Sound Effect
- Change Video Playback Speed
- Use a Different Function While Playing Music
- Check Operation Methods

▶ P. 9-10

Organizing Songs

- Set a Song as Ringtone
- Search for Songs
- Change Order of Songs
- Check Storage Capacity

▶ P. 9-10

Playlists

- Add Songs to Playlist
- Change Order of Playlist Songs
- Cancel Playlist Songs
- Edit a Playlist Name
- Copy a Playlist
- Check Playlist Information
- Delete Playlists

▶ P. 9-11



Customize

Playback Window

- Change Design of Playback Window
- Set Image Display Size

 P. 13-24)



About S! Appli

S! Appli are applications designed for SoftBank handsets. Download games and other applications.

About Lifestyle-Appli

Handset includes Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible S! Appli "Lifestyle-Appli" (P. 10-3). Change Lifestyle-Appli settings as any other S! Appli.

About Network S! Appli

Since network S! Appli require network (Internet) connection, transmission fees are incurred. A confirmation may appear when an application is connecting to the network. Follow onscreen instructions.

Tip

- For information on transmission fees, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-53).

About License Information

To check Java™ and JBlend™ license information:

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ **Information** ⇒ **Information** ⇒ **Information**

Downloading S! Appli

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ **S! Appli List** ⇒ **Download S! App** ⇒ **YES** ⇒ **YES**
- 2 **Select an S! Appli** ⇒ **(twice)**
 - ▶ **To Activate S! Appli Right Away**
YES ⇒ **Select an S! Appli** ⇒ **NO**
 - ▶ **To Activate S! Appli Later**
NO ⇒ **NO**

Note

- Check the battery level before downloading S! Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded S! Appli are no longer available.
- If you initialize handset when using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, the S! Appli will no longer be usable.

You will need to download it again.

- When using an S! Appli moved to Memory Card, using the procedures below will resave the S! Appli to your handset and the S! Appli in Memory Card will no longer be usable.
 - Download the same S! Appli with no Memory Card inserted
 - Download the same S! Appli with different Memory Card inserted
 Use an S! Appli resaved to handset as it is in handset, or again move it to Memory Card.

Tip

- For how to download Lifestyle-Appli, see P. 10-2.
- See S! Appli's Help menu or the download site for operational information.

Activating S! Appli

- 1 **MENU** ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ **S! Appli List** ⇒ **S! Appli List**



S! Appli List

- 2 **Select an application** ⇒ **(twice)**

Tip

- S! Appli is paused when a call arrives. When the call ends, a prompt appears. Select **Resume** to resume the S! Appli.
- To end S! Appli:
While running, **End** ⇒ **End**



More Features

Advanced

S! Appli

- Check S! Appli Information
- Check Storage Capacity
- Delete an S! Appli

[▶ P. 9-11](#)

Customize

When Running S! Appli

- Set Sound Volume
- Set Vibration
- Set Backlight
- Set Blinking of Backlight
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network
- Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information
- Reset Security Settings of S! Appli

[▶ P. 13-24](#)

S! Appli

- Reset S! Appli Settings
- Delete All S! Appli

[▶ P. 13-24](#)



Music Player

Start Here

- [Music Player Playback] window..... P. 9-5
- [Video Player Playback] window..... P. 9-5
- [Song List] P. 9-5
- [Playlist] window..... P. 9-6
- [Playlist Song List] P. 9-6

Playing Music/Video

Resume Playback

⇒ *TV/Music* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Music* ⇒ ● ⇒

Resume play ⇒ ●

Use Menu

[Music Player Playback] window/ [Video Player Playback] window ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ●*

*Press to toggle.

File Information

[Music Player Playback] window / [Video Player Playback] window ⇒ ⇒ *File property* or *Video info* ⇒ ●

Repeat

[Music Player Playback] window ⇒ ⇒ *Action setting* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Repeat setting* ⇒ ● ⇒ *All repeat* or *Single repeat* ⇒ ●

Set Preferred Sound Effect

[Music Player Playback] window ⇒ ⇒ *Action setting* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Sound effect* ⇒ ● ⇒ *SRS_WOW* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇒ ⇒ Set level for each effect ⇒ ● ●
● To return sound effect to initial state
⇒ Select user setting 1 to 3 ⇒ (twice) ⇒ ●

Change Video Playback Speed

[Video Player Playback] window ⇒ ⇒ *Play menu* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Fast* or *Slow* ⇒ ●
 Press to return to normal speed.

Use a Different Function While Playing Music

[Music Player Playback] window ⇒ ⇒ *Switch to BGM* ⇒ ● ⇒ Activate another function
 Press and hold in Standby during BGM playback to end Music Player.

Check Operation Methods

[Video Player Playback] window ⇒ ⇒ *Help* ⇒ ●

Organizing Songs

Set a Song as Ringtone

[Song List] ⇒ Select a song ⇒ ⇒ *Select ring tone* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select ringtone item ⇒ ●

Search for Songs

[Song List] , [Playlist] window or [Playlist Song List] ⇒ ⇒ *Search* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Title* ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter condition ⇒ ●
 Select a song from search results and press ● to play it.

Change Order of Songs

[Song List] / [Playlist Song List] ⇒ ⇒ *Sort* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a criterion ⇒ ●

Check Storage Capacity

[Song List] ⇒ ⇒ *Memory info* ⇒ ●



Playlists

Add Songs to Playlist

[Playlist Song List] → → **Edit playlist** → → **Add music** → → Select a folder → → Select songs → → → **YES** →

The songs you specified are added at the end of the playlist.

Change Order of Playlist Songs

[Playlist Song List] → Select a song → → **Edit playlist** → → **Sort playlist** → → Select a position →

Cancel Playlist Songs

[Playlist Song List] → Select a song → → **Edit playlist** → → **Release settings** →

- To Select **Release this**
→ **Release this** → → **YES** →
- To Select **Release selected**
→ **Release selected** → → Select songs → → → **YES** →
- To Select **Release all**
→ **Release all** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

Edit a Playlist Name

[Playlist] window → Select a playlist → → **Edit playlist name** → → Edit playlist name →

Copy a Playlist

[Playlist] window → Select a playlist → → **Copy to playlist** →

Check Playlist Information

[Playlist] window → Select a playlist → → **Playlist info** →

Delete Playlists

[Playlist] window → Select a playlist → → **Delete playlist** →

- To Select **Delete this**
→ **Delete this** → → **YES** →
- To Select **Delete selected**
→ **Delete selected** → → Select playlists → → → **YES** →
- To Select **Delete all**
→ **Delete all** → → **YES** →

S! Appli

Start Here

[S! Appli List] P. 9-8

Check S! Appli Information

[S! Appli List] → Select an S! Appli → → **Properties** →

Check Storage Capacity

[S! Appli List] → → **Memory Info** →

Delete an S! Appli

[S! Appli List] → Select an S! Appli → → **Delete** → → **YES** →

Tools



Osaifu-Keitai®	10-2	Canceling Alarm	10-16
About Osaifu-Keitai®	10-2	Pedometer	10-17
Using Osaifu-Keitai®	10-3	About Pedometer	10-17
Activating IC Card Lock	10-3	View Your Data	10-17
Life History Viewer	10-5	Setting User Information	10-17
Life History Viewer Window	10-5	Activating Pedometer	10-18
Viewing Data in Chronological Order	10-5	Magnifying Glass	10-19
Schedule	10-7	Bar Code Reader	10-20
Schedule Window	10-7	Scanning Bar Codes	10-20
Saving Events to Schedule	10-7	Checking Scanned Data	10-20
Checking Saved Events	10-8	Text Reader	10-22
Deleting Events	10-9	Scanning Text	10-23
To Do List	10-10	Checking Scanned Text	10-23
Saving Tasks	10-10	Advanced Features	10-25
Checking Saved Tasks	10-10	Osaifu-Keitai®	10-25
Deleting Tasks	10-11	Life History Viewer	10-25
Text Memo	10-12	Schedule	10-25
Saving Text Memos	10-12	To Do List	10-26
Deleting Text Memos	10-12	Text Memo	10-27
Voice Memo	10-13	Alarm	10-27
Recording Your Voice	10-13	Pedometer	10-27
Calculator	10-14	Bar Code Reader & Text Reader	10-27
Alarm	10-15		
Alarm Setting	10-15		



About Osaifu-Keitai®

“Osaifu-Keitai®” is a range of IC Card-based services used by Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handsets. Make purchases using e-money or e-ticketing. Hold handset up to a reader/writer to pay for your purchase.

Osaifu-Keitai® Terms

Osaifu-Keitai®	Cellular phone equipped with “FeliCa” contactless IC card technology for reading and writing data by holding phone up to a reader/writer.
IC Card	An IC chip embedded in Osaifu-Keitai®-compatible handsets.
Lifestyle-Appli	S! Applications to use Osaifu-Keitai®. Some applications are preinstalled.

Tip

- Data saved in IC Card varies by service content and usage history. Procedures to delete IC Card data vary by Lifestyle-Appli. Contact Osaifu-Keitai® service providers for details.
- Softbank is not liable for damage from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.
- IC Card data can be misused if your Osaifu-Keitai® compatible handset is lost or stolen. Softbank is not liable for any resulting damages.

Getting Started

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

Download Lifestyle-Appli via Internet website.
 · Lifestyle-Appli is saved to Data Folder.

Registrations/Settings

Activate Lifestyle-Appli to complete registration or customize settings.
 · Make deposit into account, check payment records or balance, etc.

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

Downloading Lifestyle-Appli

1 → **Tools** → → **Osaifu-Keitai** → → **Lifestyle-Appli** → → **Download LifeApp** → → **YES** →

2 Select a Lifestyle-Appli → (twice)▶

- ▶ To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Right Away
YES → → Select a Lifestyle-Appli →
- ▶ To Activate Lifestyle-Appli Later
NO →

Note

- Check the battery level before downloading Lifestyle-Appli. If the battery level is low, download may fail.
- If you replace USIM Card due to damage or loss, downloaded Lifestyle-Appli are no longer available.



Activating Lifestyle-Appli

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Osaifu-Keitai** ⇒ ⇒ **Lifestyle-Appli** ⇒



Lifestyle-Appli List

- 2 Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇒

Note

- Keep a copy of service passwords, customer service contact, etc. in a separate place.

Tip

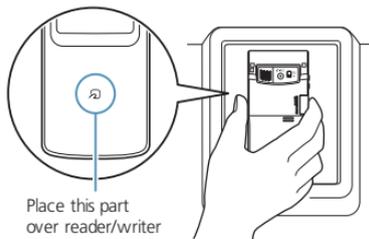
- Lifestyle-Appli is paused when a call arrives. Lifestyle-Appli resumes when the call ends.
- To end Lifestyle-Appli: While running, ⇒ **End** ⇒

Using Osaifu-Keitai®

Reader/Writer Transactions

- There is no need to activate a Lifestyle-Appli during transaction.
- Make sure battery is adequately charged.
- Transactions are possible even when handset power is off or during calls or Internet transmissions.

- 1 Hold up to a reader/writer ⇒ Check scan result on reader/writer display



Place this part over reader/writer

Hold handset parallel to the reader/writer. Try moving handset around if recognition is slow.

Note

- Softbank is not liable for damages from accidental loss or alteration of IC Card data or settings.

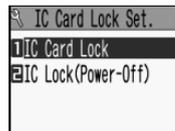
Tip

- Data may be unreadable if a metal object, etc. is between logo and reader/writer.

Activating IC Card Lock

Use this function to restrict access to and prevent unauthorized use of Osaifu-Keitai®.

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Osaifu-Keitai** ⇒ ⇒ **IC Card Lock Set.** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒



IC Card Lock Setting Window

- 3 **IC Card Lock** ⇒ ⇒ **ON** ⇒
 appears in Standby.

Setting Operation of IC Card Lock after Power Off

- 1 [IC Card Lock Setting] window ⇒ **IC Lock (Power-off)** ⇒ ⇒ **Maintain or IC Card Lock ON** ⇒



Tip

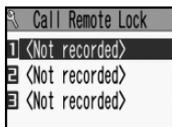
- Alternatively, to set IC Card Lock: In Standby, press and hold **[3]**
- To cancel IC Card Lock: In Standby, press and hold **[3]** → Enter Security Code → ●

Remote Lock

Call from a specified phone to activate Call Remote Lock.

Saving Numbers to Activate Call Remote Lock

- 1** **MEMO** → **Tools** → ● → **Osaifu-Keitai** → ● → **Call Remote Lock** → ●
- 2** Enter Security Code → ●
- 3** **ON** → ●



Call Remote Lock Setting Window

4 <Not recorded> ▶

- ▶ **To Enter and Save Numbers**
● → Enter phone numbers → ●
- ▶ **To save numbers from Phone Book, Redial or Received calls**
[F] → **Look-up address** → ● → **Phone Book, Redial or Received Calls** → ● (→ Search Phone Book → ●) → Select a number → ●
- ▶ **To save a Payphone number**
[F] → **Payphone** → ●

5

Tip

- To cancel Call Remote Lock: At step 3, select **OFF** → ●

Activating Call Remote Lock

- 1** **Using one of the specified phones, call handset**
Send Caller ID.
- 2** **Hang up after handset receives the call**
- 3** **Within three minutes, repeat 1 - 2 twice**
After the third Missed Call, IC Card Lock is set; a message announces IC Card Lock activation.

Note

- If series is interrupted by another call, Missed Call count is reset. Start over from the beginning.

More Features

Advanced

Osaifu-Keitai®

- Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties
- Check Memory Status
- Delete a Lifestyle-Appli
- Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers
- Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

▶ P. 10-25

Customize

Osaifu-Keitai®

- Set Illumination and Vibration for IC Card
- Delete all Lifestyle-Appli

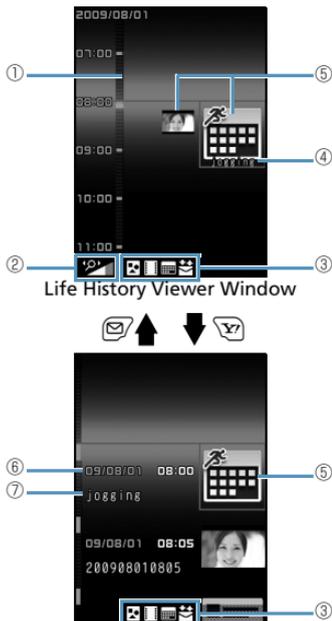
▶ P. 13-26



Life History Viewer

View activities in chronological order.

Life History Viewer Window



①	Time Axis
②	Scale of Time Axis - Hide
③	Data Type Still image, Image data Video Schedule Received Sent Received & sent messages
④	Data properties Still image, image, Movie: No image Schedule: Schedule name Mail message (send/receive) history: The sender for the received mail, and the receiver for the sent mail
⑤	Icon Still image, image: Image thumbnail Movie: Schedule: e.g. Mail message (send/receive) history: e.g.
⑥	Date and time Still image, image, movie: Shooting, Updating or Saving date and time Schedule: Start date and time Mail message (send/receive) history: Received/Sent date and time

⑦	Title Still image, image, movie: Title Schedule: Schedule name Mail message (send/receive) history: The sender for the received mail, and the receiver for the sent mail
---	--

Tip

- Still images and images in JPEG format can be browsed.

Viewing Data in Chronological Order

1 → **Tools** → → **Life History Viewer** →



Life History Viewer Window

To reduce/enlarge scale of time axis, press or .



2 Select a data item ⇔ ●



Life History Viewer Closeup Window

3

The function corresponding to the data type is activated and the data is opened.

More Features

Advanced

Life History Viewer

- Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer
- Update Life History Viewer

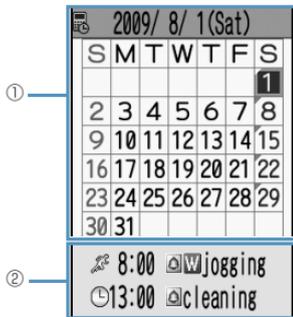
 P. 10-25



Schedule

Save future events to Schedule. Set the alarm to be activated at a specified time with message and animation appearing to remind you of the event. Saved events can be checked from Schedule window.

Schedule Window



Schedule Window

①	<p>Calendar</p> <p>Blue date: Saturdays</p> <p>Red date: Sundays, public and other holidays</p> <p>Pink date: Anniversary</p> <p>Date with gray background: Today</p>
②	<p>Information Panel</p> <p>Content type icon, time, and saved content</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Content Type Icon <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (or a user icon) Event Holiday Anniversary To Do list Event Repetition Icon <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Daily event Weekly event (Select day) Annual event Event for over a day

Saving Events to Schedule

1 MENU ⇒ Tools ⇒ ⇒ Schedule ⇒



2 ⇒ Schedule ⇒



Event Edit Window

3 ⇒ ⇒ Enter details ⇒ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒

4 ⇒ ⇒ Enter start/end date and time ⇒

5 ⇒ ⇒ 1 time, Daily (), or Select day () ⇒ (⇒ Put checkmarks to days of the week ⇒)

6 ⇒ ⇒ Select an alarm notification option ⇒ (⇒ Enter time)



Schedule

- 7** → → → Select an alarm tone type → (→ Select a folder →) → Select an alarm tone →
- Folders are unavailable when **Clock Alarm Tone**, **Voice Announce** or **OFF** is selected.

- 8** → → Enter title →

Alarm Notification

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display or External Display) for approximately five minutes.
Press any key to stop alarm. Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.

Adding Holidays & Anniversaries

- 1** **[Schedule] window** → → **Holiday or Anniversary** →
- 2** → → Enter year, month and date →
- 3** → → **1 time or Annually** () →

- 4** → → Enter content →
- 5**

Setting Secret Entries

Set private events as secret entries.

- Activate Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode beforehand. (P. 4-6)
- Events set as secret entries are viewable only in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode. (P. 4-6)

- 1** **[Event Edit] window** → Enter items →

Tip

- To cancel secret setting in Secret Mode or Secret Data Only Mode: [Event List]/[Event Details] → → **Release secret** → → **YES** →

Checking Saved Events

- 1** → **Tools** → → **Schedule** →

2009/ 8/ 1(Sat)						
S	M	T	W	T	F	S
						1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	10	11	12	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	20	21	22
23	24	25	26	27	28	29
30	31					

8:00 jogging
13:00 cleaning

Schedule Window

Press to toggle between weekly and monthly view.

- 2** → Select a date with events →

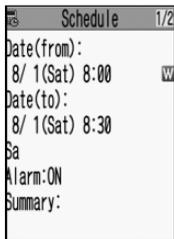
2009/ 8/ 1(Sat)	
8:00-8:30	jogging
13:00-14:00	cleaning
16:30-18:00	going out
21:00-23:00	dinner

Event List



Schedule

3 Select an event ⇨ ●



Event Details

Deleting Events

To Delete One Event

- 1 In [Event List], select an event or [Event Details] ⇨
- 2 **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Delete this** ⇨ ●
⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

To Delete Multiple Events

- 1 In [Schedule] window, select date, [Event List] or [Event Details] ⇨
- 2 **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Delete selected** ⇨ ●

3 Select an event ⇨ ●

Repeat this step to specify other events.

4 ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

To Delete All Events Prior to a Specified Date

- 1 In [Schedule] window, select date, [Event List] or [Event Details] ⇨
- 2 **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨ **Delete past** ⇨ ●
⇨ **Select an item** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

More Features

Advanced

Schedule

- Sort Events by Icon
- Save User Icons
- Cancel User Icons
- Check Number of Saved Events
- Edit an Event
- Copy an Event
- Delete All Events
- Reset Holidays
- Search Information by Keyword

▶ P. 10-25

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

▶ P. 13-2



To Do List

Save tasks to To Do List. Set Alarm to remind you of deadlines.

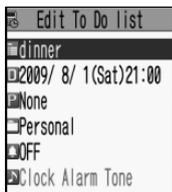
Saving Tasks

1 → **Tools** → → **To Do List** →

2 → **New** →

■ **To Edit a Saved Task**

→ Select a task → → **Edit** →



Task Edit Window

3 → → **Enter task** →

Task appears when alarm time arrives.

4 → →

▶ **To Enter Date Manually**

Enter date → → Enter due date and time →

▶ **To Enter Due Date from Calendar**

Choose date → → Select a date on Calendar → → Enter date/time →



▶ **To Cancel a Due Date**

No date →

5 → → Select a priority level →

6 → → Select a category →

7 → → Select an alarm notification option → (→ Enter time)

8 → → Select an alarm tone type → (→ Select a folder → → Select an alarm tone → →

Folders are unavailable when **Clock Alarm Tone**, **Voice announce** or **OFF** is selected.

Alarm Notification

When the set time arrives, alarm sounds and animation appears (on Display or External Display) for approximately five minutes.

Press any key to stop alarm. Press any key again to end notification message.

Tip

- If the set alarm time arrives during a call, alarm tone sounds through earpiece.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.

Checking Saved Tasks

1 → **Tools** → → **To Do List** →



Task List

2 Select a task →



Task Details

Tip

- Overdue tasks are indicated by red status icons (e.g.).



Deleting Tasks

To Delete One Task

- 1 In [Task List], select a task or [Task Details] ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete this** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

To Delete Multiple Tasks

- 1 [Task List] ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete selected** ⇒
- 3 Select a task ⇒
Repeat this step to specify other tasks.
- 4 ⇒ **YES** ⇒

To Delete All Completed Tasks

- 1 [Task List] ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete completed** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

More Features

Advanced

To Do List

- Sort Tasks by Category
- Change Order of Tasks
- Set Task Status
- Delete All Tasks

▶ P. 10-26

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

▶ P. 13-2



Text Memo

Save short notes or messages as text memos.

- Saved text memos can be inserted in Schedule or in messages.

Saving Text Memos

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Text Memo** ⇒



Text Memo List

- 2 **<Not recorded>** ⇒ ⇒ Enter content ⇒

■ To Edit a Saved Text Memo

- ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒ ⇒ Edit content ⇒

Deleting Text Memos

To Delete One Text Memo

- 1 [Text Memo List] ⇒ Select a text memo ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete this** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

To Delete Multiple Text Memos

- 1 [Text Memo List] ⇒
- 2 **Delete** ⇒ ⇒ **Delete selected** ⇒
- 3 **Select a text memo** ⇒
Repeat this step to specify other text memos.
- 4 ⇒ **YES** ⇒

More Features

Advanced

Text Memo

- Save a Text Memo to Schedule
- Sort Text Memos by Category
- Check Text Memo Information
- Delete All Text Memos

▶ P. 10-27



Voice Memo

Record voice for up to 20 seconds. Handset makes single recording and overwrites each time.

- See P. 3-5 and P. 3-18 for playing and deleting a recorded voice memo.

Recording Your Voice

1  ⇒ **Tools** ⇒  ⇒ **Msg./VC**
Msg. ⇒  ⇒ **Voice Memo** ⇒ 

2 **YES** ⇒  ⇒ **Record your voice**
Speak into microphone after short beep sounds through earpiece.
When remaining recording time reaches five seconds, a short beep sounds. When recording is finished, two short beeps sound. To stop recording, press .

Tip

- Recording stops automatically when a call arrives, alarm goes off or another function is activated.
- See P. 3-4 for details on recording the other party's voice.



Calculator

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Calculator** ⇒

2 Enter numbers with Keypad ⇒
Enter +, -, × or ÷ with Multi Selector

■ To Calculate Negative Numbers

⇒ ⇒ Enter numbers with keypad ⇒

Enter +, -, × or ÷ with Multi Selector

3

Result appears.

Tip

- If the calculation result exceeds 10 digits, *.E* appears.

Available Functions

Enter Number	
+ (Add)	
- (Subtract)	
× (Multiply)	
÷ (Divide)	
= (Equal)	
Decimal Point	
Cancel Calculation	
Clear Number	



Alarm Setting

1 → **Tools** → → **Alarm** →

Alarm 1/3	
Alarm1	ON
6:00	
Alarm2	OFF
Alarm3	OFF
Alarm4	OFF

Alarm List

2 Select an alarm →

Edit alarm	
Alarm1	
6:00	
1 time	
Clock Alarm Tone	
Level 4	
Snooze 5times/5min	
Auto power OFF	

Alarm Setting Window

3 → → **Enter title** →

Title appear in Alarm message.

4 → → **Enter time** →

5 → → **1 Time, Daily (D) or Select day (W)** → (→ Put checkmarks to days of the week →)

6 → → **Select an alarm tone type** → (→ **Select a folder** →) → **Select an alarm tone** →
Folders are unavailable when **Clock Alarm Tone, Voice announce** or **OFF** is selected.

7 → → to adjust volume →

8 →

▶ **To Set Snooze**

ON → → Enter number of activation times → Enter time interval

▶ **To Cancel Snooze**

OFF → → Enter ringing duration

9 → → **ON or OFF** → →

■ **To View Alarm Entries**

→ Select an entry →

Alarm	
Alarm1	
6:00	
1 time	
Clock Alarm Tone	
Level 4	
Snooze 5times/5min	
Auto power OFF	

Alarm Details

Alarm Activation Operations

When the set time arrives, alarm activates and animation appears (on Display or External Display). When Auto Power is set to ON (Alarm Setting window), handset automatically turns on for alarm.

Press any key to stop the alarm tone with handset open.

When Snooze is set to **OFF**, press any key again to cancel the alarm and return to the window before the alarm activation.

When Snooze is set to **ON**, the alarm sounds repeatedly in the set time interval. Press to cancel Snooze.



Note

- When **Keypad sound** is set to **ON**, two short beeps sound if you:
 - Press a key, after canceling alarm (Snooze not set).
 - Press  while snooze is still set.
- Set the auto power-on function to **OFF** in Alarm Setting window and turn off handset, when you are near high-precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, on an aircraft or in a hospital where handset use is prohibited.
- If a call arrives while the alarm is sounding, the alarm stops.
- If the alarm activation time comes during a call, the alarm sounds from Earpiece. Snooze does not work even if it is set to **ON**.

Canceling Alarm

1 [Alarm List] ⇔ Select an alarm ⇔



Each time you press , the alarm toggles between ON and OFF.

Tip

- Alarm settings are retained even if the alarm is canceled.

More Features

Advanced

Alarm

- Cancel All Alarms
- Edit Alarm Settings

 P. 10-27

Customize

Alarm

- Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time
- Change Alarm Tone

 P. 13-2



Pedometer

About Pedometer

Use Pedometer to track number of steps and elapsed time. Pedometer also records traveled distance and burned calories.

Note

- Accuracy may be affected by walking style or vibrations (Calculation is paused when handset vibrates/shakes).
- 歩行距離 (Distance) and 消費カロリー (Burned Calories) are based on the entered weight and stride. Use these results as a rough guide only.
- When handset is inside a bag or holder, place handset in a pocket or compartment. This can prevent handset from moving around and provide a more accurate count.

Using Pedometer for the First Time

Enter items including weight and stride before using Pedometer for the first time.

View Your Data

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Pedometer**



Pedometer Details

Window opens in the same View (*Daily*, *Weekly* or *Monthly*) previously used.

Tip

- To view number of steps, burned calories, etc. in Standby and/or External Display:
 - Standby: **My Picture** ⇒ **Pre-installed** ⇒ **Calorie**
 - External Display: **Clock type** ⇒ **Digital 4**

Available Functions

Toggle Daily, Weekly, and Monthly views (Pedometer Details)	⇒ Display setting ⇒ ⇒ Select view →
Toggle previous and next day, week, or month (Pedometer Details)	/
Toggle Details/List view (<i>Daily</i> view)	
Toggle information (List view)	to cycle through StepCount → ActivityTime → Distance → Calorie

Setting User Information

- 1 [Pedometer Details] ⇒ ⇒ **Setting** ⇒
- 2 Enter Security Code ⇒ ⇒ Enter weight ⇒ Enter stride ⇒



Activating Pedometer

1 Pedometer Details ⇨ ⇨ **Start/Stop** ⇨ ⇨ **Start** ⇨ ⇨ **YES** ⇨

appears when Pedometer is activated.

Step count is saved every 10 minutes.

Tip

- Pedometer is unavailable when handset power is off.
- To Deactivate Pedometer:

[Pedometer Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Start/Stop** ⇨ ⇨ **Stop** ⇨

More Features

Advanced

Pedometer

- Reset Today's Data
- Reset All Data

P. 10-27)



Magnifying Glass

View images from Rear Camera at 2 to 5 times magnification.

- When using Magnifying Glass, set Macro Switch to **Q** (Macro Lens), and hold Rear Camera at a distance of 6 cm to 8 cm from the subject.

1 Set Macro Switch to **Q** (Macro Lens) ⇨ **Loupe** ⇨

■ To Change Magnification

⇨  or 

Tip

- Set Macro Switch back to  (Standard Lens) or close handset to end Magnifying Glass.



Bar Code Reader

JAN codes and QR codes can be scanned by Bar Code Reader using handset camera.

About JAN & QR Codes

JAN Code

A bar code made of vertical lines (bars) with different widths and spaces in between, representing numbers. Handset can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

QR Code

A two-dimensional code representing alphanumeric, kanji, kana, or pictographs. Some QR codes are made up of several data areas that are scanned as individual QR codes and then automatically combined as one QR code.

2 Frame the bar code in the recognition field



Bar Code Scanning Window

Scanning starts automatically.

┌, ┐, └ and ┘ indicate the corners of the recognition field.

Press to toggle zoom.

■ To Cancel Scanning

⇒ ⇒ OK ⇒

■ To Scan a QR Code Made of Several Data Areas (QR Codes)

⇒ OK ⇒ (twice) ⇒ Scan a QR code

Repeat this step to scan other QR codes. All component QR codes must be scanned in order to access or save scanned data on handset.

3 Check scanned data

■ To Discard Scanned Data

⇒ CLEAR ⇒ YES ⇒

4 ⇒ Store ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ⇒ OK ⇒

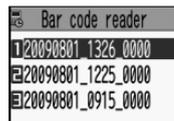
Tip

- A JAN code/QR code must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition field.
- Scanning may take a while.
- Some bar codes may not be scanned depending on the size, version or print quality, or due to scratches, stains, damage or the reflection of light.

Checking Scanned Data

1 [Bar Code Scanning] window ⇒

⇒ Reading data list ⇒



Scanned Bar Code Data List

2 Select an entry ⇒



Scanned Bar Code Data Details

Scanning Bar Codes

- Set Macro Switch to (Macro Lens), and hold Rear Camera about 6 cm to 8 cm away from the barcode.

1 Set Macro Switch to (Macro Lens) ⇒ Bar code reader ⇒



Tip

- Characters that are not supported by Bar Code Reader are replaced with spaces (blanks).

More Features

Advanced

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Copy Text
- Edit Title of Scanned Data
- Delete Scanned Data

 P. 10-28)



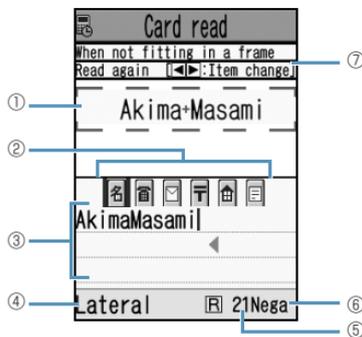
Text Reader

Use Text Reader to scan printed text.

Scan Modes

Card read	Scan name, phone number, e-mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on business cards, and save all scanned data collectively as a Phone Book entry.
Compose message	Scan address, subject or message text, and open Composition (S! Mail) window with the address, subject or message text entered.
URL	Scan URL, and access the page or save the URL to Bookmark.
Mail address	Scan e-mail address, and compose an S! Mail to the address.
Phone number	Scan phone number, and make a call to the number.
Free memo	Scan Japanese or English text, and save the text to Text Memo.

Text Scanning Window



Text Scanning Window

①	Recognition Frame
②	Scan Item Icons <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Name Phone number E-mail address Postal code Address Memo To Subject Message text
③	Recognized Text Field
④	Recognition Mode
⑤	Remaining Number of Characters That Can be Scanned
⑥	Negative Mode <i>Nega</i> appears when <i>NEGA/POSI Mode</i> is set to <i>Negative Fix</i> .
⑦	Key Guidance



Scanning Text

- Set Macro Switch to (Macro Lens), and hold Rear Camera about 6 cm to 8 cm away from the barcode.

<Example> Scanning in *Card Read* mode

- 1 Set Macro Switch to (Macro Lens) \Rightarrow **Text reader** \Rightarrow
- 2 **New** \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **Card read** \Rightarrow



Text Scanning Window

- 3 \Rightarrow **Select a scan item icon** \Rightarrow **Frame text in the recognition frame**
Press to toggle zoom in and zoom out.
 - 4
- The text is scanned.
The recognized text appears.

■ To Rescan the Same Text

\Rightarrow \Rightarrow **YES** \Rightarrow

■ When Scanned Text Overflows Recognized Text Field

\Rightarrow to scroll the field

■ To Scan Following Text

\Rightarrow \Rightarrow Frame text in the recognition frame (include several scanned characters of the preceding text) \Rightarrow

■ To Scan Another Item

\Rightarrow \Rightarrow \Rightarrow Select a scan item icon \Rightarrow Frame text in the recognition frame \Rightarrow

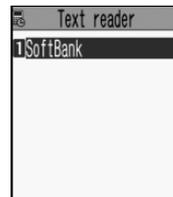
5

Tip

- Text must be accurately focused and be enlarged to fill the recognition frame.
- When *Processing ...* appears, do not move handset.
- Handwritten text is not recognized.
- Text may not be recognized correctly when:
 - Faxed or copied text is scanned.
 - Decorated characters are scanned.
 - Spaces between characters are uneven.
 - Text is indistinguishable from the background.
 - Ambient lighting is inappropriate.

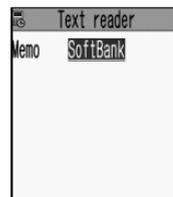
Checking Scanned Text

- 1 \Rightarrow **Tools** \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **Text Reader** \Rightarrow \Rightarrow **Reading data list** \Rightarrow



Scanned Text List

- 2 **Select an entry** \Rightarrow



Scanned Text Details



More Features

Advanced

Scanning Text

- Correct Scanned Text
- Edit Scanned Text
- Set Printing Status of Text
- Set Guidance ON/OFF
- Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

▶ P. 10-27)

Using Scanned Data

- Make a Call
- Compose a Message
- Access the Internet
- Save to Phone Book
- Save a Bookmark
- Search Phone Book
- Save a Text Memo
- Copy Text
- Delete Scanned Data

▶ P. 10-28)



Osaifu-Keitai®

Start Here

[Lifestyle-Appli List]P. 10-3
 [Call Remote Lock Setting] window... P. 10-4

Check Lifestyle-Appli Properties

[Lifestyle-Appli List] ⇨ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇨ ⇨ **Properties** ⇨ ●

Check Memory Status

[Lifestyle-Appli List] ⇨ ⇨ **Memory Info** ⇨ ●

Delete a Lifestyle-Appli

[Lifestyle-Appli List] ⇨ Select a Lifestyle-Appli ⇨ ⇨ **Delete** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Edit Call Remote Lock Numbers

[Call Remote Lock Setting] window ⇨
 Select phone number ⇨ ● ⇨ Change
 phone number ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ● ⇨

Delete Call Remote Lock Numbers

[Call Remote Lock Setting] window ⇨
 Select phone number ⇨ ⇨ **Delete this**
 or **Delete all** ⇨ ● ⇨ **YES** ⇨ ●

Life History Viewer

Start Here

[Life History Viewer] windowP. 10-5
 [Life History Viewer Closeup] window
P. 10-6

Hide Some Items in Life History Viewer

[Life History Viewer] window / [Life
 History Viewer Closeup] window ⇨ ⇨
Display setting ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a data item
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item ⇨ ● ⇨

Only checked items appear in Life History
 Viewer window.

Update Life History Viewer

[Life History Viewer] window / [Life
 History Viewer Closeup] window ⇨ ⇨
Reload ⇨ ●

Schedule

Start Here

[Schedule] window P. 10-7
 [Event List] P. 10-8
 [Event Details] P. 10-9

Sort Events by Icon

[Schedule] window, [Event List] or [Event
 Details] ⇨ ⇨ **Icon display** ⇨ ● ⇨
 Select an icon ⇨ ●

Save User Icons

[Schedule] window, [Event List] or
 [Event Details] ⇨ ⇨ **User icon setting**
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Select item ⇨ ● ⇨ Select folder
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Select item ⇨ ●
 Use saved icons when saving events.

Cancel User Icons

[Schedule] window, [Event List] or
 [Event Details] ⇨ ⇨ **User icon setting**
 ⇨ ● ⇨ Select item ⇨ ● ⇨ **Release this**
 ⇨ ● (⇨ **Yes** ⇨ ●)
 Select **Release all** to cancel all saved icons.



Check Number of Saved Events

[Schedule] window → → *No. of schedules* → ●

Edit an Event

[Event List] / [Event Details] (⇨ Select an event) → ⇨ Edit each item →

Copy an Event

[Event List] / [Event Details] → ⇨ **Copy** → ● ⇨ Enter start/end date and time → ● ⇨ Edit each item →
 Repetition setting of an event is canceled when it is copied.

Delete All Events

[Schedule] window, [Event List] or [Event Details] → ⇨ **Delete** → ● ⇨ **Delete all** → ● ⇨ Enter Security Code → ● ⇨ Select an item → ● ⇨ **YES** → ●

Reset Holidays

[Schedule] window → ⇨ **Reset holiday** → ● ⇨ **YES** → ●

Search Information by Keyword

[Event Details] → ⇨ **Quick Search** → ●

- To Enter a Keyword
⇨ **Enter keyword** → ● ⇨ Enter keyword → ● ⇨ ⇨ ● ⇨ Select an item from search results → ●
- To Enter a Keyword with Quote Keyword
⇨ **Quote keyword** → ● ⇨ **Schedule** or **Summary** → ● ⇨ Move cursor to head of keyword to search → ● ⇨ Move cursor to last character of keyword to search → ● ⇨ ⇨ ● ⇨ Select item from results → ●
- To Select a Keyword from Previous Searches
⇨ **History** → ● ⇨ Select keyword → ● ⇨ ⇨ Select item from results → ●

To Do List

Start Here

[Task List]P. 10-10
[Task Details]P. 10-10

Sort Tasks by Category

[Task List] → ⇨ **Category display** → ● ⇨ Select a category → ●

Change Order of Tasks

[Task List] → ⇨ **Sort/Filter** → ● ⇨ Select a criterion → ●

Set Task Status

[Task List] / [Task Details] (⇨ Select a task) → ⇨ **Change status** → ● ⇨ Select a status → ●

The set status is indicated by the status icon in Task List and in Task Details.

When **Completion** is set as status, enter the completion date.

Delete All Tasks

[Task List] → ⇨ **Delete** → ● ⇨ **Delete all** → ● ⇨ Enter Security Code → ● ⇨ **YES** → ●



Text Memo

Start Here

[Text Memo List] P. 10-12

Save a Text Memo to Schedule

[Text Memo List] → Select a text memo → [F] → *Edit schedule* → ● → Enter each item → [S]

[S] Entered text appears in the Details field when Event Edit window is opened.

Sort Text Memos by Category

[Text Memo List] → Select a text memo → [F] → *Category* → ● → Select a category → ●

Check Text Memo Information

[Text Memo List] → Select a text memo → [F] → *Text memo info* → ●

Delete All Text Memos

[Text Memo List] → [F] → *Delete* → ● → *Delete all* → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → *YES* → ●

Alarm

Start Here

[Alarm List] P. 10-15

[Alarm Details] P. 10-15

Cancel All Alarms

[Alarm List] / [Alarm Details] → [F] → *Release all* → ● → *YES* → ●

Edit Alarm Settings

[Alarm List] / [Alarm Details] (→ Select an alarm) → [S] → Edit each item → [S]

Pedometer

Start Here

[Pedometer Details] P. 10-17

Reset Today's Data

[Pedometer Details] → [F] → *Total data reset* → ● → *Today data reset* → ● → *YES* → ●

Reset All Data

[Pedometer Details] → [F] → *Total data reset* → ● → *All data reset* → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → *YES* → ●

Bar Code Reader & Text Reader

Start Here

[Scanned Bar Code Data List] P. 10-20

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] P. 10-20

[Text Scanning] window P. 10-23

[Scanned Text List] P. 10-23

[Scanned Text Details] P. 10-23

Scanning Text

Correct Scanned Text

[Text Scanning] window → Scan text → [C] to move cursor to the character you want to correct → Press the number key corresponding to the correct character on the suggestion list

[S] Press [X] to toggle upper case and lower case.



Edit Scanned Text

[Text Scanning] window → Scan text → → **Edit** → ● → Edit text using keypad
 To cancel editing and return to scanned text, press , select *Select recog. data* and then press ●.

Set Printing Status of Text

[Text Scanning] window → → **NEGA/POSI mode** → ● → **Auto setting**, **Positive fix** or **Negative fix** → ●
 Set to *Positive fix* when dark-colored text is printed on a light-colored background.
 Set to *Negative fix* when light-colored text is printed on a dark-colored background.

Set Guidance ON/OFF

[Text Scanning] window → → **Guidance OFF** or **Guidance ON** → ●

Set Vertical/Lateral Scan

[Text Scanning] window → → **Vertical writing** or **Lateral writing** → ●

Using Scanned Data

Make a Call

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select a phone number → → **Dialing** → ● → **Voice phone** or **Video Call** → ● → **Dial** → ● → Talk → to end call

Compose a Message

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select an e-mail address → → **Create S! mail** → ● → Compose and send S! Mail

Access the Internet

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select a URL → → **Internet** → ● → **YES** → ●

Save to Phone Book

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select an item → → **Add to phonebook** → ●
 ● To Select *Phone*
 → **Phone** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → ● (twice)) → Edit each item → (→ **YES** or **NO** → ●) (→ Enter entry number → ●)
 ● To Select *USIM*
 → **USIM** → ● → Select store method → ● (→ Search Phone Book → Select an entry → ● (twice)) → Edit each item → (→ **Overwrite** or **Add** → ●) (→ **YES** → ●)

Save a Bookmark

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned Text Details] → Select a URL → → **Add bookmark** → ● (twice) → Select a folder → ●

Search Phone Book

[Scanned Text Details] → Select an item → → **Search phonebook** → ● → Search Phone Book



Advanced Features

Save a Text Memo

[Scanned Text Details] ⇨ Select an item ⇨

⇨  ⇨ **Add to memo** ⇨ 

Copy Text

[Scanned Bar Code Data Details] / [Scanned

Text Details] ⇨  ⇨ **Copy** ⇨  ⇨

Select beginning of characters ⇨  ⇨

Select end of characters ⇨ 

Edit Title of Scanned Data

[Scanned Bar Code Data List] ⇨ Select an

entry ⇨  ⇨ **Edit title** ⇨  ⇨ Edit title

⇨ 

Delete Scanned Data

[Scanned Bar Code Data List] / [Scanned

Text List] ⇨ Select an entry ⇨ 

● To Select *Delete this*

⇨ *Delete this* ⇨  ⇨ **YES** ⇨ 

● To Select *Delete all*

⇨ *Delete all* ⇨  ⇨ Enter Security Code

⇨  ⇨ **YES** ⇨ 

Data Management



About Data Folder	11-2	Advanced Features.....	11-14
Accessing Files	11-3	Accessing Files	11-14
Opening Files.....	11-3	Editing Files	11-15
Creating Animations	11-4	Managing Folders	11-15
Using Playlist (Melodies)	11-5	Managing Files	11-16
Using Playlists (Videos).....	11-5	Memory Card.....	11-16
Editing Files	11-7		
Editing Still Images.....	11-7		
Editing Videos	11-8		
File & Folder Management.....	11-9		
Creating a Folder.....	11-9		
Moving Files to a Different Folder	11-9		
About Memory Card.....	11-10		
Inserting & Removing a Memory Card.....	11-10		
Managing Memory Cards	11-11		
Formatting a Memory Card	11-11		
Accessing Memory Card Data.....	11-11		
Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card.....	11-12		
Configuring Print Settings of Images.....	11-13		

11



About Data Folder

Use Data Folder to manage data on handset. New data created by handset functions or obtained via the Internet or mail are saved to different folders according to the file format.

- Some folders contain links. Use the links to access download sites in Yahoo! Keitai.

Folders & Files in Data Folder

My Picture

Image files such as those taken by camera and downloaded My Pictograms

Melody

Melodies and audio files recorded by Voice Announce

S! Appli

Downloaded S! Appli and Lifestyle-Appli

Ring Songs-Music

Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full® and downloaded music files

Videos

Video files such as those recorded by camera

TV

Recorded programs¹ and still images captured from programs²

- 1 Can be saved on memory card only.
- 2 Can be saved on handset only.

When Data Folder memory is full or number of files savable is reached, a message asks whether to delete unnecessary data (note, however, this message may not appear depending on the data type). Follow the steps below to delete data:

YES → ● → Select a folder → ● → Select a data item → ● →  → YES → ●

- You may need to select a data type before selecting a folder if the data you want to delete has multiple storage areas.
- You may need to select more than one data item to delete depending on the degree of insufficient memory.



Opening Files

<Example> Open Video File

- 1 MENU → **Data Folder** → ● → **Videos** → ●
- 2 Select a folder → ●



File List

- 3 Select a file → ●



Opened File Window

Opening Files on Memory Card

- 1 MENU → **Data Folder** → ●
- 2 Select a folder → ● → **microSD** → ●
- 3 Select a folder → ●
- 4 Select a file → ●

Indicators in File List

In File List, indicators appear for settable items.

- QVGA movie
- VGA movie
- Attachable to mail
- Insertable in Graphic Mail
- Settable as wallpaper, etc.
- Settable as a ringtone
- Infrared transmittable
- Copyable or movable to memory card
- Editable
- Over 10 MB
(Viewable only in Memory Card)

Functions in My Picture Window

Selecting a file in My Picture folder opens a window such as below.



My Picture Window

The following operations are possible in My Picture window.

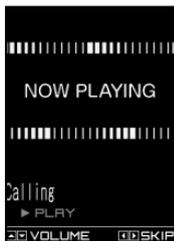
Switch Files	●
Toggle Normal Screen and Full Screen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> In full screen mode, view lengthwise images in Portrait View and widthwise images in Landscape View.
Zoom In/Zoom Out*	● → or
Show at Actual Size*	● →
Scroll Large-sized or Zoomed-in Image*	

* Press ● to return to the original size.



Functions in Melody Window

Selecting a file in Melody folder opens a window such as below.



Melody Window

The following operations are possible in Melody window.

Switch Files	
Adjust Volume	
	77- OF MUSIC
Stop	
End	

Tip

- Select files in S! Appli to activate S! Appli. For information about S! Appli, see P. 9-8.
- Select files in Ring Songs-Music or Videos to activate Music Player. For details, see P. 9-3.

Creating Animations

Create animations each of which is made of up to 20 frames using still images in My Picture folder.

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ⇒ **Original animation** ⇒



Original Animation List

- 2 **<New>** ⇒
 - 3 **Select a frame** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a still image** ⇒
- Repeat this step to assign a series of images to their respective frames.
- **To Cancel an Assigned Image**
 ⇒ Select a frame ⇒ ⇒ **Release this** ⇒

4

Note

- Only images in JPEG format can be used for creating animations.
- Some images may be unavailable depending on the image size or file size.
- Images saved on external memory devices (i.e. memory card) cannot be used.

Tip

- Select an animation you created in Original Animation List and press to play the animation.



Using Playlist (Melodies)

Save melodies to Playlist to play back in the saved order.

1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Melody** ⇒ ⇒ **Playlist**

2 ⇒ **Edit playlist** ⇒

■ **To Clear Playlist**

⇒ ⇒ **Release playlist** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

3 **Select a number** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a melody** ⇒

Repeat this step to assign other melodies to different numbers.

■ **To Cancel an Assigned Melody**

⇒ **Select a number** ⇒ ⇒ **Release this** ⇒

4

Tip

- Select Playlist folder in Melody and press to play Playlist.
- Changing file names of melodies on Playlist, or deleting melody files clears Playlist.

Using Playlists (Videos)

Save videos to a playlist to play them in the playlist order.

1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Videos** ⇒ ⇒ **Playlist** ⇒



Playlist Window

2 **Select a playlist** ⇒ ⇒ **Edit playlist** ⇒

3 **Select a number** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a video** ⇒
Repeat this step to assign other videos to different numbers.

■ **To Cancel an Assigned Video**

⇒ **Select a number** ⇒ ⇒ **Release this** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

4

Tip

- Select a playlist from a playlist folder and press to play.



More Features

Advanced

Opening Files

- Check File Information
- Change Order of Files
- Set an Image to Appear in Standby
- Set a Video to Appear in Standby
- Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

(▶ P. 11-14)

Viewing Images

- Play Animation from the Beginning
- Compose Four Images to Make One
- Set Display Size of an Image
- Edit Title of an Original Animation
- Cancel an Original Animation

(▶ P. 11-14)

Playing Melodies

- Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

(▶ P. 11-15)

Playing Videos

- Switch Display Format of File List
- Clear a Playlist

(▶ P. 11-15)

Customize

Display Settings

- Set Image List View

(▶ P. 13-3)



Editing Still Images

Basic Flow of Operations

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ⇒ **Select a folder** ⇒ ⇒ **Select an image** ⇒



My Picture Window

- 2 ⇒ **Edit image** ⇒ ⇒ **Select an editing option** ⇒ ⇒ **Edit image**
- 3 to end editing
- 4 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒
Selecting **YES** overwrites the original image. Selecting **NO** saves the edited image as a new file in the same folder.

Note

- Only images with in File List can be edited.
- Repeated editing may cause deterioration of image quality or increased file size.
- Some items are unavailable for images larger than 854 x 480 dots or 480 x 854 dots. Such images are automatically reduced to VGA (640 x 480) or Tall VGA (480 x 640) when saved.

Adding a Frame

- 1 [My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Edit image** ⇒ ⇒ **Frame** ⇒
- 2 **Select a frame** ⇒
 - To Change Frame ⇒
 - To Rotate Frame 180 Degrees ⇒
 - To Cancel Frame ⇒ ⇒ **Cancel** ⇒
- 3
- 4 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒

Adding Stamps

- 1 [My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Edit image** ⇒ ⇒ **Marker stamp** ⇒
- 2 **Select a marker stamp** ⇒
 - To Rotate Marker Stamp ⇒ ⇒ **90° to right, 90° to left or 180°** ⇒
 - To Enlarge/Reduce Marker Stamp ⇒ ⇒ **Scale up or Scale down** ⇒
 - To Cancel Marker Stamp ⇒
- 3 ⇒ **Select a position** ⇒
 - To Paste Another Marker Stamp ⇒ ⇒ **Select a marker stamp** ⇒
- 4
- 5 ⇒ **YES or NO** ⇒

Pasting a Text Stamp

- 1 [My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Edit image** ⇒ ⇒ **Character stamp** ⇒
- 2 **Enter text** ⇒



To Edit Text

⇒ ⇒ *Character input* ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter text ⇒ ●

To Change Text Color

⇒ ⇒ *Character color* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●
Press to toggle color palettes.

To Change Font Type

⇒ ⇒ *Font type* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Gothic* or *Ming-Cho* ⇒ ●

To Change Font Size

⇒ ⇒ *Font size* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a font size ⇒ ●

3 ⇒ Select a position ⇒ ●

4 ●

5 ● ⇒ *YES* or *NO* ⇒ ●

Cropping an Image

1 [My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ *Edit image* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Trim away* ⇒ ●

2 Select a size ⇒ ● ⇒ to select an area ⇒ ●

3 ●

4 ● ⇒ *YES* or *NO* ⇒ ●

Editing Videos

Clip the desired scenes from saved videos.

1 ⇒ *Data Folder* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Videos* ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a video ⇒ ⇒ *Edit Video* ⇒ ●

2 ⇒ *Trim Videos* ⇒ ● ⇒ *Any size* or *500KB* ⇒ ● ▶

▶ To Start from Beginning



▶ To Start from a Halfway Point

● ⇒ At a desired point ⇒ ● ⇒

Video plays and clipping starts.

The video playback and clipping start at the same time.

3 ● to stop ⇒

Selected portion plays.

When *500KB* is selected, clipping stops automatically when the size of clipped video reaches 500 KB.

4 ● (twice) ⇒ *YES* ⇒ ●

Note

- Only QCIF (176 x 144) or smaller videos with in File List can be clipped.

More Features

Advanced

Editing Files

- Retouch an Image
- Adjust Image Brightness
- Rotate an Image
- Change Image Size
- Correct Backlight
- Refresh Skin Tone

(▶ P. 11-15)



Creating a Folder

- 1 ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ⇒ Select a folder type ⇒

<Example>When My Picture is Selected



Folder List

- 2 ⇒ **Add folder** ⇒ ⇒ Enter folder name ⇒

Tip

- Folders can only be created in handset Data Folder.

Moving Files to a Different Folder

- 1 **[File List]** ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒ **Move** ⇒

- ▶ **To Move Selected File**
Move this ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒
- ▶ **To Move Multiple Files**
Move selected ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ Select a file ⇒ (repeat to select another file) ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒
- ▶ **To Move All Files in a Folder**
Move all ⇒ ⇒ Select a destination folder ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

More Features

Advanced

Managing Folders

- Edit a Folder Name
- Delete a Folder
- Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody or Video Folder

▶ P. 11-15

Managing Files

- Edit a Title in My Picture File List
- Check Volume of Saved Files
- Edit a File Name
- Delete Files

▶ P. 11-16



About Memory Card

Save files to memory cards. Still images and videos shot with handset camera can be saved directly to memory card. Data can be copied and moved between handset and memory card. Data on memory card can also be accessed from Data Folder.

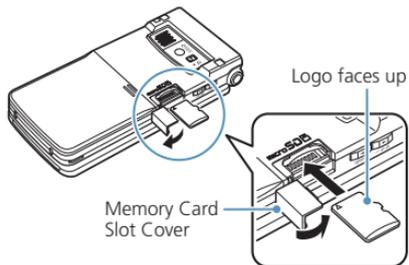
- Handset supports memory cards of up to 2 GB.
- Do not insert or remove memory cards when handset power is on.
- Insert memory cards properly. Otherwise, they cannot be used on handset.
- Do not affix stickers or labels to memory cards. As memory cards are very thin and precise mechanisms, even a thin sticker or label on a memory card may cause contact failure or destruction of data.
- Keep memory cards out of reach of infants who may accidentally swallow them or be injured.
- Do not remove a memory card or power off handset while writing and reading data with that memory card. It may cause data loss or malfunction.
- Access to memory cards may be unavailable when the battery level is low.

Inserting & Removing a Memory Card

Turn handset power off before inserting or removing a memory card.

Insertion

- 1 Open Slot Cover**
- 2 Insert memory card into Memory Card Slot until it locks**
Insert gently with the printed logo facing up.



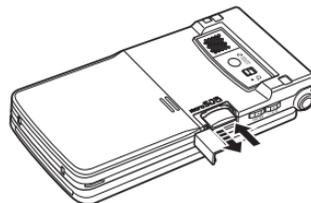
- 3 Close Slot Cover**

Tip

- If  appears in Display, there may be a contact failure. Remove and reinsert memory card.

Removal

- 1 Press and release**
Gently pull out memory card.



Note

- Memory card may spring out.
- Memory card may break if inserted or removed with force.



Managing Memory Cards

Formatting a Memory Card

- Format memory cards on handset only. Memory cards formatted on another device or PC may not work.
- Formatting a memory card deletes all the data on it.

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒

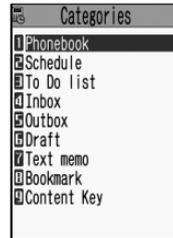
2 ⇒ **microSD format** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter Security Code** ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒

Note

- Do not remove memory card while formatting. Handset/memory card malfunction may occur.
- Make sure that there is no important data left on the memory card before formatting it.

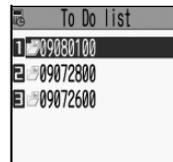
Accessing Memory Card Data

1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒



microSD Manager Window

2 **Select a category** ⇒



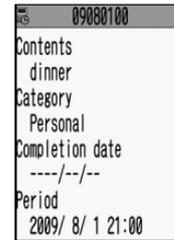
File List

3 **Select a file** ⇒



Data List

4 **Select a data item** ⇒



Data Details



Copying Data between Handset & Memory Card

Following items can be copied to/from handset and memory card:

PIM Data	Phone Book entries, Schedule, To Do List, text memos, Inbox, Outbox, Draft, bookmarks, content keys
Files in Data Folder	Still images, My Pictograms, Flash®, melodies, videos, songs

Copying Handset Data to Memory Card

Copy Phone Book entries, Schedule, messages, images, videos, etc.

<Example> Copy data in Data Folder to memory card

1 [Data List] → → **Copy to microSD** →

▶ To Copy Selected Data

Copy this → (→ Select destination folder →)

▶ To Copy Multiple Data

Copy selected → (→ Select copy destination folder →) → Select a data item → (repeat to select another data) → → **YES** →

▶ To Copy All Data

Copy all → → Enter Security Code → (→ Select copy destination folder →) → **YES** →

Tip

- When one Phone Book entry or Schedule event that is set as secret is copied to memory card, its secret setting is canceled.
- Files attached to messages may be deleted.
- You need to select a destination folder when copying data in My Picture folder.
- Data saved in Pre-installed folders of Data Folder cannot be copied.
- Content keys are copied collectively at one time.

Copying Memory Card Data to Handset

To Copy Images or Other Data to Handset

1 → **Data Folder** → → **Select a folder type** → → **microSD** → → **Select a folder and sub-folder** → → **Select a data item** → → **Copy to phone** →

▶ To Copy Selected Data

Copy this →

▶ To Copy Multiple Data

Copy selected → → Select a data item → (repeat to select another data) → → **YES** →

▶ To Copy All Data

Copy all → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →



To Copy PIM Data to Handset

- ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ● ⇒ **microSD Manager** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Select a PIM data type** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Select a data item** ⇒ ⇒ **Copy & overwrite** ⇒ ●▶
 - ▶ **To Copy Selected Files Copy & OW this** ⇒ ●
 - ▶ **To Copy Multiple Files Copy & OW select** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Select a file** ⇒ ● (repeat to select another file) ⇒
 - ▶ **To Copy All Files Copy & OW all** ⇒ ●
- Enter Security Code** ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ● (⇒ **YES** or **NO** ⇒ ●)

Note

- When copying memory card data to handset in overwrite mode, the corresponding data on handset is overwritten by the copied data.
- If the maximum storable number of items is reached when copying all items, copying stops at that point.

Configuring Print Settings of Images

Specify which images on memory card to be printed and the number of prints, etc. in DPOF (Digital Print Order Format) settings so that the images can be printed by DPOF compatible printers or print service shops.

- ⇒ **Data Folder** ⇒ ● ⇒ **My Picture** ⇒ ● ⇒ **microSD** ⇒ ● ⇒ **DCIM** ⇒ ●
- Select a folder** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Select a still image** ⇒ ⇒ **DPOF setting** ⇒ ●▶
 - ▶ **To Specify Selected Images DPOF set One** ⇒ ●
 - ▶ **To Specify Multiple Images DPOF set Choice** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Select a still image** ⇒ ● (repeat to select another image) ⇒
- Print** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Print Sheets** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Enter number of prints** ⇒ ●
- a date** ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON** or **OFF** ⇒ ●
-

More Features

Advanced

Memory Card

- Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card
- Check & Repair Memory Card
- Delete Data on Memory Card
- Cancel Print Settings of Images

(▶ P. 11-16)



Accessing Files

Start Here

[File List]	P. 11-3
[Opened File] window	P. 11-3
[My Picture] window.....	P. 11-3
[Melody] window.....	P. 11-4
[Original Animation List]	P. 11-4
[Playlist] window.....	P. 11-5

Opening Files

Check File Information

[File List] / [Opened File] window (⇒
Select a file) ⇒ ⇒ **Image info, Video
info, Melody info, File property or
Properties** ⇒ ●

Change Order of Files

[File List] ⇒ ⇒ **Sort** ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a
criterion ⇒ ●

Set an Image to Appear in Standby

[File List] / [Opened File] window (⇒
Select a file) ⇒ ⇒ **Set as display** ⇒ ●
⇒ **Stand-by display** ⇒ ● (⇒ Select a
layout ⇒ ● ⇒ Confirm preview ⇒ ●)
 Set images to appear when making calls or
sending messages.

Set a Video to Appear in Standby

[File List] ⇒ Select a file ⇒ ⇒
Stand-by display ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●

Set a Melody/Video as Ringtone

[File List] / [Opened File] window (⇒
Select a file) ⇒ ⇒ **Ring tone** ⇒ ● ⇒
Select an item ⇒ ●
 Only melodies can be set as ringtones from
Opened File window.

Viewing Images

Play Animation from the Beginning

[My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Retry** ⇒ ●

Compose Four Images to Make One

[File List] ⇒ ⇒ **Composite image** ⇒ ●
⇒ Select a position ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a folder
⇒ ● ⇒ Select an image ⇒ ● ⇒ Repeat
the same step to assign three other images
to their respective positions ⇒ ⇒ ●
 Only images in JPEG format can be used for
creating composite images.
 Copyright-protected images are unavailable.
 Images saved on memory card cannot be
used.
 Some images cannot be used depending on
their size.

Set Display Size of an Image

[My Picture] window ⇒ ⇒ **Set image
disp.** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Normal** or **Fit in display** ⇒
●

Edit Title of an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] ⇒ Select an
animation ⇒ ⇒ **Edit title** ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit
title ⇒ ●

Cancel an Original Animation

[Original Animation List] ⇒ Select an
animation ⇒ ⇒ **Release animation** ⇒
● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●



Advanced Features

Playing Melodies

Play All Melodies in the Same Folder Repeatedly

[Melody] window → → *Set repeat play* → ● → *ON* → ●

Playing Videos

Switch Display Format of File List

[File List] → → *List setting* → ● → *Title* or *Title+image* → ●

Clear a Playlist

[Playlist] window → Select a playlist → → *Release playlist* → ● → *YES* → ●

Editing Files

Start Here

[My Picture] window..... P. 11-7

Retouch an Image

[My Picture] window → → *Edit image* → ● → *Retouch* → ● → Select an effect → ● (three times) → *YES* or *NO* → ●

Adjust Image Brightness

[My Picture] window → → *Edit image* → ● → *Brightness* → ● → to adjust brightness → ● (twice) → *YES* or *NO* → ●

Rotate an Image

[My Picture] window → → *Edit image* → ● → *Rotate* → ● → *90° to right, 90° to left* or *180°* → ● (three times) → *YES* or *NO* → ●

Change Image Size

[My Picture] window → → *Edit image* → ● → *Change size* → ● → Select a size → ● (three times) → *YES* or *NO* → ●

Correct Backlight

[My Picture] window → → *Edit image* → ● → *Correct backlight* → ● (three times) → *YES* or *NO* → ●

Refresh Skin Tone

[My Picture] window → → *Edit image* → ● → *Refresh skin tone* → ● (three times) → *YES* or *NO* → ●

Managing Folders

Start Here

[Folder List] P. 11-9

Edit a Folder Name

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → *Edit folder name* → ● → Edit folder name → ●

Only names of user-created folders can be edited.

Delete a Folder

[Folder List] → Select a folder → → *Delete folder* → ● → Enter Security Code → ● → *YES* → ●

Only user-created folders can be deleted.

Files in the selected folder are also deleted.

When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.



Delete All Files in My Picture, Melody or Video Folder

[Folder List] → → **Delete all Image or Delete all** → → Enter Security Code → → **YES** →

When files that are set as wallpaper, ringtone, alarm tone, etc. are deleted, their settings are reset to default.

Managing Files

Start Here

[File List]P. 11-3

Edit a Title in My Picture File List

[File List] → Select an image file → → **Edit title** → → Edit title →

Titles of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

Check Volume of Saved Files

[File List] → → **Memory info** →

Edit a File Name

[File List] → Select a file → → **Edit file name** → → Edit file name →

Names of files saved in Pre-installed folders cannot be edited.

Delete Files

[File List] → Select a file → → **Delete** →

- To Select *Delete this*
→ **Delete this** → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete selected*
→ **Delete selected** → → Select file →
(repeat to select another file) → → **YES** →
- To Select *Delete all*
→ **Delete all** → → Enter Security Code
→ → **YES** →

Memory Card

Start Here

[microSD Manager] window P. 11-11
 [File List]P. 11-11
 [Data List]P. 11-11
 [Data Details].....P. 11-11

Check Available Memory Space of Memory Card

[microSD Manager] window, [File List] , [Data List] or [Data Details] → → **microSD info** →

Check & Repair Memory Card

[microSD Manager] window → → **Check microSD** → → **YES** →

To cancel checking and repairing a memory card, press or .

Some memory cards may not be repairable.



Delete Data on Memory Card

[File List] → Select a data item → →

Delete →

● To Select *Delete this*

→ *Delete this* → → *YES* →

● To Select *Delete selected*

→ *Delete selected* → → Select file →

(repeat to select another file) → →

YES →

● To Select *Delete all*

→ *Delete all* → → Enter Security Code

→ → *YES* →

Cancel Print Settings of Images

→ *Data Folder* → → *My Picture* →

→ *microSD* → → *DCIM* → →

Select a folder → → Select a still image

→ → *DPOF setting* → → *DPOF set*

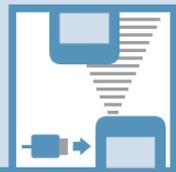
One or *DPOF set Choice* → (→ Select an

image → (repeat to select another

image) → → *Print OFF* or *All print OFF*

→

Connectivity



Infrared	12-2
Getting Started.....	12-2
Transferring Data via Infrared.....	12-3
PC Connection	12-5
USB Driver.....	12-5
Data Transfer.....	12-5
Setting USB Mode.....	12-5
Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC.....	12-5
Using Handset as Modem.....	12-6

12



Getting Started

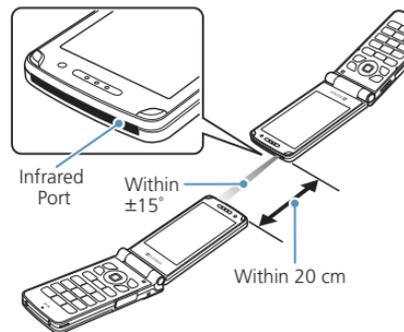
Wirelessly exchange files with infrared compatible devices. The following files are transferable via infrared:

- Still images
- Melodies
- Videos
- My Pictograms
- Songs
- Phone Book entries, Account Details
- Schedule events
- To Do List tasks
- Received messages, sent messages
- Draft messages
- Text memos
- Common Phrases (Templates)
- Own Dictionary data
- Bookmarks (Yahoo! Keitai and PC Site Browser)

Precautions

- File transfer may not start depending on receiving device status. Some settings or content may be lost depending on the receiving handset model.
- Handset is out of range during infrared transmission, so such functions as voice and video calls, the Internet access and sending/receiving S! Mails are unavailable. This may continue even after infrared transmission is finished.
- Transferring data may take a while depending on the amount of data. Some data may not be received by handset.
- During transfer, progress bar shows approximate number of files transferred. Note that actual progress may be faster.
- Some pictographs and symbols in messages and Phone Book entries may not be received by handset correctly.
- All the still images on handset are overwritten, even those set as Phone Book entry images, if handset receives all still images at once.

- Align Infrared Ports of both sending and receiving devices, as shown below.



- Do not move either device until a message appears indicating completion of data transmission. Do not place any objects between the devices. Do not obstruct Infrared Ports.
- Infrared transmission may be disrupted by direct sunlight, directly under fluorescent lighting or near other infrared devices.



Authentication Password

To transfer multiple files at once, the same authentication password must be entered on both sending and receiving devices.

Transferring Data via Infrared

Sending One File

Send one file at a time.

- 1 Select a file** → → **Send Ir data** →
- 2 Set the receiving device to receive data**
- 3 Align Infrared Ports** → **YES** →
Transfer starts.
Message appears when file transfer is complete.
To Cancel Transfer
→

Note

- File transfer is unavailable for Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card.

Tip

- In a data list window, press to send a JPEG image via high-speed transmission.
- In the case of high-speed transmission of JPEG images, the receiving device may fail to receive images, even when the image transmission is successfully completed by the sending device.

Receiving One File

- 1** → **Tools** → → **Receive Ir Data** → → **Receive** →
- 2 Align Infrared Ports**
Transfer starts.
To Cancel Transfer
→
- 3 When file is received** → **YES** →
File is saved to handset.
File is discarded if no operation is performed within 30 seconds of transfer.

Sending All Files

Send all files at one time from a data list window/data details window.

- 1 In a data list window/data details window** → → **Send all Ir data** →
- 2 Enter Security Code** → → Enter authentication password
- 3 Set the receiving device to receive data**
- 4 Align Infrared Ports** → **YES** →
Transfer starts.
When all files are sent, a message appears indicating completion of transfer.
To Cancel Transfer
→

Note

- All file transfer is unavailable for still image, melody, video, My Pictogram and Song.
- File transfer is unavailable for Phone Book entries saved on USIM Card.



Receiving All Files

- 1 ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ⇒ **Receive Ir Data** ⇒ ⇒ **Receive all** ⇒
 - 2 **Enter Security Code** ⇒ ⇒ **Enter authentication password**
 - 3 **Align Infrared Ports** ⇒ **YES** ⇒
Transfer starts.
 - 4 **When an overwrite confirmation appears** ⇒ **YES** ⇒
Transfer starts.
Message appears when files are saved to handset.
- **To Cancel Transfer**
⇒

Note

- Existing handset files are overwritten (e.g. When all messages are transferred, existing messages, including protected messages are overwritten. When all Phone Book/Schedule entries are transferred, all data including secret data is overwritten).
- File transfer stops when maximum storable capacity is reached.

More Features

Customize

Phone Book

- Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared

P. 13-12



PC Connection

Connect handset to a PC via USB cable to use the following functions.

- USB cable is sold separately.

Function	Description
Data transfer*	Transfer Phone Book, Schedule and To Do List data between handset and a PC (P. 12-5).
USB memory	Use memory card inserted in handset as an external drive of a PC to read and write data with memory card (P. 12-5).

* USB driver must be installed in advance.

USB Driver

Install USB Driver to connect handset to a PC. Download USB Driver from the following site (Japanese).

<http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/>

Data Transfer

Use Data Transfer Tool to transfer data between handset and a PC. Download Data Transfer Tool from the following site (Japanese).

<http://www.n-keitai.com/guide/download/>

- Install USB Driver before using Data Transfer Tool.

Setting USB Mode

Set USB mode before connecting handset to your PC via USB cable.

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **External Connection** ⇒ ⇒ **USB mode setting** ⇒
 - 2 **Communication mode or microSD mode** ⇒
- Set to **Communication mode** for transferring data or using handset as a modem (packet transmission).
Set to **microSD mode** for accessing memory card data from a PC.

Accessing Memory Card Data from a PC

Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable, and access memory card data from the PC.

- Set **USB Mode Setting** to **microSD mode** in advance.

- 1 **Connect handset to your PC using a USB cable**
This enables memory card data to be accessed from your PC.
- 2 **When you are finished, disconnect handset from the PC**
Follow the procedure for safely removing external devices (which differs slightly according to the operating system), when disconnecting handset from the PC.



Note

- Make sure handset and the PC are properly connected. Otherwise, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.
- If handset's battery is almost or completely empty, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost. Check handset's battery level and the power of your PC.
- Do not remove the USB cable while copying data from your PC to handset. If the USB cable is removed during data transfer, data cannot be transferred, and may even be lost.

Using Handset as Modem

Use handset as an external modem for packet transmission.

- Refer to the instructions of your Internet service provider or the manual of your PC for the network connection settings on your PC.
- To use "Access Internet" for data communication, you do not have to sign up with a service provider. For information about the service overview, access points and setting procedures, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-53).

Customization



Clock, Display & Sounds	13-2
Phone Book & Calls.....	13-12
Mail.....	13-15
Internet.....	13-18
TV	13-21
Camera	13-23
Player & S! Appli.....	13-24
Other Settings.....	13-25

13



Clock, Display & Sounds

Clock

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ● ⇒
Stand-by display ⇒ ● ⇒ **Clock display**

Hide Clock	⇒ Clock display ⇒ ● ⇒ Display ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ●
Clock Size	⇒ Clock display ⇒ ● ⇒ Size ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●
Clock Color	⇒ Clock display ⇒ ● ⇒ Color ⇒ ● ⇒ Black or White ⇒ ●
Time Zone (Sub Clock)	⇒ World clock display ⇒ ● ⇒ display method ⇒ ● ⇒ Always ⇒ ● (⇒ YES ⇒ ●) ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ●
Hide Sub Clock	⇒ World clock display ⇒ ● ⇒ display method ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ●
Summer Time (Sub Clock)	⇒ World clock display ⇒ ● ⇒ Summer time ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ●
 ⇒ **Set main time** ⇒ ●

Set Auto Time Adjustment	⇒ Time Adjustment ⇒ ● ⇒ Auto ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ● • Press  to change city/area name in Time Zone Selection field.
Manually Adjust Time	⇒ Time Adjustment ⇒ ● ⇒ Manual(Date time set) ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a time zone ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter date and time ⇒ ●
Summer Time	⇒ Summer time ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●

Alarm

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ●

Set Priority at Alarm Notification Time	⇒ Alarm Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Operation preferred or Alarm preferred ⇒ ●
Change Alarm Tone	⇒ Clock Alarm Tone set ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an alarm tone



Clock, Display & Sounds

Auto Power On/Off

Set Auto Power On/Off*	<p>MENU ⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Other settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Auto power ON or Auto power OFF ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter time ⇒ ● ⇒ 1 time or Daily ⇒ ●</p>
------------------------	---

* When near high precision electronic devices or devices using weak signals, or in areas where handset use is forbidden (aboard aircraft, in hospitals, etc.), set **Auto power ON** to **OFF** and turn handset power off.

Style Mode Settings

Start Here **MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Style Mode Setting** ⇒ ●

Set Display Design Collectively	⇒ Select a style ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● (⇒ YES or NO ⇒ ●)
Check Default Style Mode Settings	<p>⇒ Select a style ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Details of some items can be checked by selecting an item and pressing .
Edit Title of a Style	⇒ Select a style ⇒ ⇒ Edit title ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit title ⇒ ●
Save Current Style Mode Settings as Favorite	<p>⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Take Setting info ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The current style mode settings can later be recalled collectively from お気に入り when they are changed.

Change Each Item for Favorites	⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒ ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image
Clear All Favorite Settings	⇒ お気に入り (Favorites) ⇒ ⇒ Reset Setting info ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Display Settings

Start Here **MENU** ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ●

Wallpaper	<p>⇒ Stand-by display ⇒ ● ⇒ Stand-by display ⇒ ● ⇒ My Picture or Videos ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image/video (⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ● (twice))</p>
Show Calendar in Standby	<p>⇒ Stand-by display ⇒ ● ⇒ Stand-by display ⇒ ● ⇒ Calendar ⇒ ● ⇒ Background ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image ⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ● (twice)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Select No background if you do not want any image in the background of the calendar. Press ●, use to select the calendar and press ● to operate it. Use to switch to the previous/next month. Press ● to activate Schedule.



Clock, Display & Sounds

Slideshow	<p>⇒ <i>Stand-by display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Stand-by display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Random display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a folder ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a layout ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Images switch at random each time handset is opened or returns to Standby.
Set a Wake-up Image	<p>⇒ <i>Stand-by display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Wake-up display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>My Picture</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image</p>
Set a Wake-up Message	<p>⇒ <i>Stand-by display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Wake-up display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Message</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter message ⇒ ●</p>
Set an Outgoing Call/Message Image	<p>⇒ <i>Dialing/Calling disp.</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Dialing, Video Call Dialing or Mail sending</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image</p>
Set Image or Video for Incoming Call/Message	<p>⇒ <i>Dialing/Calling disp.</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Calling, Video Call Calling or Mail receiving</i> ⇒ ● (⇒ <i>My Picture</i> or <i>Videos</i> ⇒ ●) ⇒ Set an image/video</p>
Set Image for New Message/Received Result Window	<p>⇒ <i>Dialing/Calling disp.</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Retrieve New or Mail rec'd result</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image</p>
Display Color Scheme	<p>⇒ <i>Color theme/Icon</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Color theme</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●</p>

Battery Level Indicator/Signal Strength Indicator Design	<p>⇒ <i>Color theme/Icon</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Battery icon</i> or <i>Antenna icon</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ●</p>
Set Softkey Color	<p>⇒ <i>Color theme/Icon</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Soft key</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●</p>
Interface Language	<p>⇒ <i>Other settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ 言語選択 ⇒ ● ⇒ 日本語 or <i>English</i> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To change interface language from Japanese to English: ⇒ MENU ⇒ 設定 ⇒ ● ⇒ 画面表示 ⇒ ● ⇒ その他の設定 ⇒ ● ⇒ Language ⇒ ● ⇒ English ⇒ ●
Set Image List View	<p>⇒ <i>Other settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Viewer settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Picture</i> or <i>Title</i> ⇒ ●</p>
Guard from Prying Eyes	<p>⇒ <i>Other settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Privacy angle</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Alternatively, press and hold [8] in Standby to toggle Privacy Angle on and off. The other party may hear a short beep when this operation is performed during a call. • When <i>Privacy angle</i> is set, Display is whitish and the viewing angle is narrower.
Show New Message Info While Viewing TV	<p>⇒ <i>Other settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Quick Info setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Display sender</i> or <i>Display sender/subject</i> ⇒ ●</p>



Clock, Display & Sounds

Set Effect for Screen Change	⇒ <i>Screen Effect</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ●
------------------------------	---

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Character/Font** ⇒ ●

Set Font Type	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Font type</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Gothic</i> or <i>Ming-cho</i> ⇒ ●
Set Font Thickness	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Thickness</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Thin</i> or <i>Bold</i> ⇒ ●
Set Font Sizes Collectively	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Character size</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Standard</i> or <i>X-large</i> ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Items settable with <i>Separate setting</i> for <i>Character size</i> can be set collectively.
Set Font Size for Each Function Window	⇒ <i>Font</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Character size</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Separate setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a window ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ● ⇒  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> In PC Site Browser, only available in Small Screen view.

Backlight

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Display** ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Backlight** ⇒ ●

Set Backlight & Power Saving	⇒ <i>Lighting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ● (⇒ Enter a time before the Power Saver Mode is activated) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press and hold (F5) to toggle Backlight on/off. When the Power Saver Mode is activated, nothing appears in Standby. Pressing any key cancels the Power Saver Mode.
Set Backlight during Charging	⇒ <i>Charging</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Standard</i> or <i>All time ON</i> ⇒ ●
Set Backlight Lighting Area	⇒ <i>Area</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>LCD+Keys</i> or <i>LCD</i> ⇒ ●
Set Brightness of Backlight	⇒ <i>Brightness</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a Level ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Backlight is Middle by default. Setting to Bright reduces battery life.



Clock, Display & Sounds

Desktop Icons

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ● ⇒
Stand-by display ⇒ ● ⇒ **Desktop icon** ⇒ ●

Set Desktop Theme	⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● • Press to see details of the selected theme.
Change Icon Design of a Theme	⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ ⇒ CHG icon image ⇒ ● ⇒ Select icon image or Default icon image ⇒ ● (⇒ Set and icon)
Change Order of Icons of a Theme	⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ ⇒ Sort ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a position ⇒ ●
Copy Icons to Another Theme	⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ ⇒ Copy ⇒ ● ⇒ Copy this, Copy selected or Copy all ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a destination theme ⇒ ● (⇒ Select icons ⇒ ● ⇒) • When Copy selected or Copy all is selected, select YES and press ● at the end of the procedure.
Move Icons to Another Theme	⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ⇒ Select an icon ⇒ ⇒ Move ⇒ ● ⇒ Move this, Move selected or Move all ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a destination theme ⇒ ● (⇒ Select icons ⇒ ● ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ●)

Delete Icons of a Theme
 ⇒ Select a theme ⇒ ⇒ Select an icon
 ⇒ ⇒ **Delete** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Delete this, Delete selected** or **Delete all** ⇒ ● (⇒ Select icons ⇒ ● ⇒ ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●)

Start Here ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ●

Set New Message Indicator in 3D
 ⇒ **3D display setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ●



Clock, Display & Sounds

Menu Display Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ⇒ **Menu display set** ⇒

Set Menu Theme*	⇒ Theme ⇒ ⇒ Select a theme ⇒
Change Icon Design (Original Theme)*	⇒ Theme ⇒ ⇒ Original theme ⇒ (⇒ YES or NO ⇒) ⇒ Select a menu item ⇒ ⇒ Set an image <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change Main Menu icons to any preferred image. • Press to check current setting.
Change Background (Original Theme)*	⇒ Theme ⇒ ⇒ Original theme ⇒ (⇒ YES or NO ⇒) ⇒ Background image ⇒ ⇒ Set an image <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change Main Menu background to any preferred image. • Press to check current setting.
Reset Original Theme Settings*	⇒ Theme ⇒ ⇒ Original theme ⇒ (⇒ YES or NO ⇒) ⇒ Select a menu item ⇒ ⇒ Reset or All reset ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Only available when any Original theme settings have been changed.
Save Last Selected Menu Item to Memory	⇒ Memory focus ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒

* If menu theme is changed, handset operations will differ from descriptions in this guide.

Start Here ⇒ ⇒ *

Add a Menu Item to Original Menu	⇒ <Not stored> ⇒ ⇒ Select a function ⇒ (⇒ YES ⇒)
Change Order of Original Menu Items	⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Sort ⇒ ⇒ Select a position ⇒
Cancel Original Menu Items	⇒ Select an item ⇒ ⇒ Release or Release all ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒
Reset Original Menu	⇒ ⇒ Reset org. menu ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒

* Available when menu theme is set to **Basic Menu**. However, in **Basic Menu**, handset operations will differ from descriptions in this guide.

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Display** ⇒ ⇒ **Menu display set** ⇒

List View and Details View*	⇒ Menu display ⇒ ⇒ List or Detail ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Select View for menus from ⇒ Settings ⇒ when menu theme is Basic Menu.
-----------------------------	---

* Available when menu theme is set to **Basic Menu**. However, in **Basic Menu**, handset operations will differ from descriptions in this guide.



Standby Indicators

Enable Indicator Selector

→ **Settings** → ● → **Display** → ● →
Other settings → ● → **Icons setting** →
 ● → **ON** → ●

- The indicators at the top of Display are enabled by pressing ● in Standby. Use to select an indicator and press ● to access the corresponding function.

External Display (Indicator display)

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Display** → ● →
Indicator display → ● → **ON** → ●

Notifications/Animation

→ **Disp. clock only** → ● → **ON** → ● →

- Select **OFF** to set notifications (incoming messages, etc.) and animation (alarm, etc.) to appear.

Set Clock Pattern

→ **Clock type** → ● → Select a pattern →
 ● →

Set Messages to Appear

→ **Called, Mail or Connection** → ● → **ON**
 → ● →

Set Clock to Appear at Specified Time

→ **Time signal** → ● → **ON** → ● → **30**
minutes or **60 minutes** → ● →

Set Display On/Off

→ **Display time** → ● → **15 seconds, 1**
minute or **All time ON** → ● →

- 15 seconds: Display and Backlight stay on for 15 seconds
- 1 minute: Display stays on for 1 minute; Backlight stays on for 15 seconds
- All time ON: Display is always on; Backlight stays on for 15 seconds

Incoming Call/Message Alerts

Start Here → **Settings** → ● → **Ring Tone/Vibrator** →
 ●

Adjust Ringtone Volume

→ **Ring volume** → ● → **Phone, Video call**
 or **Mail** → ● → to adjust volume → ●

- When **Step** is set, the ringtone volume increases every three seconds. When **Silent** is set, no ringtone sounds.

Set a Ringtone

→ **Select ring tone** → ● → **Phone, Video**
call or **Mail** → ● → Select an item → ●
 (→ Select a folder → ●) → Set a ringtone

Set Random Playback of Melodies as Ringtones

→ **Select ring tone** → ● → **Phone, Video**
call or **Mail** → ● → **Random melody** →
 ● → Select a folder → ●

- Melodies in the selected folder are played at random as ringtones.



Clock, Display & Sounds

Set Vibration*	<p>⇒ <i>Vibration setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Phone, Video call</i> or <i>Mail</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When <i>Melody linkage</i> is set, handset vibrates to the melody set as ringtone.
-----------------------	---

* When *Vibrator* is not set to *OFF*, be careful not to let handset fall off a desk or slide too close to a stove, etc. when it vibrates.

Start Here ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Sound/Display Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Ringtone Duration for Incoming Message	<p>⇒ <i>Ring time</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Mail</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter ringing duration</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When <i>OFF</i> is set, no ringtone sounds and handset does not vibrate when receiving messages.
---	---

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Illumination** ⇒ ●

Set Illumination Color	<p>⇒ <i>Incoming call</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Color</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Phone, Video Call</i> or <i>Mail</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●</p>
-------------------------------	---

Set Illumination Pattern	<p>⇒ <i>Incoming call</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Pattern</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Even when <i>Melody linkage</i> is set, Illumination may not flash to the melody depending on the set ringtone.
---------------------------------	---

Set Illumination to Flash for Missed Calls/New Messages	<p>⇒ <i>Incoming call</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Missed info</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ ●</p>
--	--

Set an Incoming Call/Message Image	<p> ⇒ <i>Settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Display</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Dialing/Calling disp.</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Calling, Video Call Calling</i> or <i>Mail receiving</i> ⇒ ● (⇒ <i>My Picture</i> or <i>Videos</i> ⇒ ●) ⇒ Set an image/video</p>
---	---

Show Phone Book Entry Images for Incoming Calls/ Messages	<p> ⇒ <i>Phone</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Check Phone setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Other settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Disp. phonebook image</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> ⇒ ●</p>
--	--

Answering Incoming Calls

Start Here ⇒ **Phone** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Check Phone setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ●

Set to Answer Calls by Pressing Any Key	<p>⇒ <i>Answer setting</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Any key answer</i> ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Answer incoming voice calls by pressing a key from ● - * and . The any key answer function is disabled for incoming video calls.
--	--



Clock, Display & Sounds

Set to Mute Ringtone by Pressing Any Key

⇒ **Answer setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Quick silent** ⇒ ●

- Mute the ringtone by pressing a key from 0 - 9, *, CLEAR, (for voice calls only), *, and or by opening handset.

Manner Mode

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Manner mode set** ⇒ ●

Set Manner Mode Type

⇒ Select a Manner Mode ⇒ ●

- When *Super silent* is set, all tones emitted through the earpiece are also muted.

Configure Original Manner Mode

⇒ **Original** ⇒ ● ⇒ Set each item ⇒

Checking Call Logs

Start Here ⇒ **Phone** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Check Phone setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ●

Notify Missed Calls with Tone (When Pressed)

⇒ **Info notice setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ●

- Two short beeps sound twice when there are missed calls, and three short beeps sound when there are none.

Change Colors of Names, Phone Numbers and E-mail Addresses in Call and Message Log Windows

⇒ **Disp. call/receive No.** ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●

- Press to toggle the color palette between 16 colors and 256 colors.
- To reset the color settings, press .

Sounds

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Key Sound Off

⇒ **Keypad sound** ⇒ ● ⇒ **OFF** ⇒ ●

Set to Play Charging Start/End Tones

⇒ **Charge sound** ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ●

Start Here ⇒ **Tools** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Voice Announce** ⇒ ●

Record Sound to Set as Ringtone or Outgoing Message

⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ● ⇒ Record sound (for about 15 seconds)

- Press ● to stop recording.

Play Recorded Sound

⇒ Select an item with ★ ⇒ ●

Delete Recorded Sound

⇒ Select an item with ★ ⇒ ⇒ **Erase** ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●



Earphone-Microphone

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ●
 ⇒ **External Connection** ⇒ ●

Audio Output	⇒ Headset usage setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Headset+speaker or Headset only ⇒ ●
Microphone Setting	⇒ Select microphone ⇒ ● ⇒ Internal microphone or External microphone ⇒ ●
Answer Calls Automatically	⇒ Auto answer setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Phone or Video Call ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter ring time

Start Here  ⇒ **Phone** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Check Phone setting** ⇒ ●
 ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ●

Save a Phone Number to Dial with an Earphone-Microphone	⇒ Headset sw to dial ⇒ ● ⇒ Voice call ⇒ ● ⇒ Search Phone Book ⇒ Select an entry ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a phone number ⇒ ●
---	---



Phone Book

Set Preferred Search Method	[Phone Book Search] window (P. 2-19) → Select a search method → → OK → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To cancel the preferred search method, press in Phone Book Search window, select the search method with ★, and then press .
Change Group Name	[Phone Book Entry List] (P. 2-19) → → Group setting → ● → Select a group → ● → Edit group name → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The name remains the same only for <i>No Group</i>.
Do Not Send Phone Book Entry Images via Infrared	→ Tools → ● → Forwarding Image → ● → OFF → ●

Outgoing Calls

Start Here	→ Phone → ● → Check Phone setting → ● → Other settings → ●
Save Area Code and Country Code as Prefix Numbers	→ Prefix setting → ● → Select an item → → Enter name → ● → Enter prefix numbers → ●

Save Touch Tones	→ Pause dial → ● → → Enter touch tone numbers → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Press and hold to enter "p" (Pause).
Set Numbers after "*" as Sub Address	→ Sub-address setting → ● → ON → ●

International Calls

Start Here	→ Phone → ● → Check Phone setting → ● → Other settings → ● → Int'l dial assistance
Change International Access Code Automatically Dialed with "+"	→ Auto int'l call set. → ● → ON → ● → Select a country code → ● → Select an international access code → ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When OFF is set, the international access code is not entered when you press and hold . Select an international access code you set in <i>IDD Prefix Setting</i>.
Change a Country Code	→ Country Code setting → ● → Select an item → → Enter country name → ● → Enter country code → ●
Save an International Access Code	→ IDD Prefix setting → ● → Select an item → → Enter international access name → ● → Enter international access code → ●



Call Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Phone** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Check Phone setting**
⇒ ● ⇒ **Talk** ⇒ ●

Set Reconnection Tone	⇒ Reconnect signal ⇒ ● ⇒ High tone or Low tone ⇒ ●
Set Noise Reduction	⇒ Noise reduction ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●
Set Weak Signal Alarm	⇒ Quality alarm ⇒ ● ⇒ High tone or Low tone ⇒ ● • Calls may be disconnected without sounding the alarm when signal suddenly becomes too weak.
Set Clarity of Other Party Voice	⇒ Hyper Clear Voice ⇒ ● ⇒ High, Low and OFF ⇒ ●
Change Color of Illumination While Calling	⇒ Illumination in talk ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ●
Set a Hold Message	⇒ On hold tone ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a hold tone ⇒ ● (⇒ ●)
Set Closing Sound Off	⇒ Setting when folded ⇒ ● ⇒ No tone ⇒ ●
End Call By Closing Handset	⇒ Setting when folded ⇒ ● ⇒ End the call ⇒ ●

Call Costs

Start Here ⇒ **Phone** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Check Phone setting**
⇒ ● ⇒ **Call TimeCharge** ⇒ ●

Set Auto Reset of Total Call Cost	⇒ Auto reset total cost ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ Auto Reset ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ● (⇒ Enter PIN2 ⇒ ●) • When ON is set, the total call cost indication is automatically reset to zero at twelve midnight on the first day of each month.
Set a Maximum Call Cost Limit*	⇒ Set Max Cost Limit ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ ¥ ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter cost limit ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● ⇒ ▶ ⇒ ● ⇒ Set alarm tone ⇒ ⇒ ● ⇒ 🔊 to adjust volume ⇒ ● ⇒ 📧 ⇒ ● Enter PIN2 ⇒ ● • A call ends automatically and appears in Display when the total call cost exceeds the set maximum limit. • When the set total call cost limit has been reached, all outgoing calls are disabled. To enable outgoing calls, set the maximum call cost limit to 0: ⇒ Set Max Cost Limit ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ ¥ ⇒ ● (twice) ⇒ 📧 ⇒ ● Enter PIN2 ⇒ ●

* Cost display may not be available depending on your subscription. If unavailable, you will also be unable to set a cost limit.



Video Calls

Start Here ⇒ **Phone** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Check Phone setting**
 ⇒ ● ⇒ **Video Call** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ●

Set an Image to be Sent during Video Calls	⇒ Select image ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ Pre-installed or Original ⇒ ● • To set an image other than the preinstalled image: ⇒ Original ⇒ ⇒ Change Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Set an image
Redial Automatically as Voice Call When Video Call Connection Fails	⇒ Auto redial as voice ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●
Set an Image to Appear in Main Window	⇒ Main display ⇒ ● ⇒ Other side or My side ⇒ ●
Reverse Front Camera Image	⇒ Front camera Reverse ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●
Automatically Switch to Handsfree Mode in Video Calls	⇒ Hands-free switch ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●

Global Roaming

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ●
 ⇒ **Int'l Roaming Set** ⇒ ●

Set Operator	⇒ NW search mode ⇒ ● ⇒ Manual ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an operator ⇒ ● • When Auto is set, an available operator is set automatically. • Use this procedure when handset is out of the service area of the currently used operator.
Search Available Operator	⇒ NW search mode ⇒ ● ⇒ Network re-search ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an operator ⇒ ● • Available when NW search mode is set to Manual .
Set Priority for Operators	⇒ NW search mode ⇒ ● ⇒ PLMN setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an operator ⇒ ⇒ Change priority ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a position on the priority list ⇒ ● ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ ● • When Auto or Network re-search is set under NW search mode , you are automatically connected to the highest priority operator among available operators.
Show Operator Name While Roaming	⇒ Display operator name ⇒ ● ⇒ Display ON ⇒ ● • Operator name unavailable when menu theme is set to Big Character Menu .



S! Mail Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ●

Edit Header/ Signature	⇒ Header/Signature ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit header or Edit signature ⇒ ● (twice) ⇒ Edit header/signature ⇒
Insert Header/ Signature Automatically	⇒ Header/Signature ⇒ ● ⇒ Insert setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Header or Signature ⇒ ● ⇒
Set to Check Delivery	⇒ S! Mail settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Delivery Report ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After a recipient receives your S! Mail, a message titled S! Mail Report is sent to your Softbank handset.

SMS Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **SMS settings** ⇒ ●

Set to Check Delivery	⇒ SMS report request ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> After a recipient receives your SMS message, a message titled SMS report is sent to your Softbank handset.
--------------------------	--

Set Server Storage Period of SMS Messages	⇒ SMS validity period ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a period ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When None is set, SMS messages you send are not stored on the server.
Set SMS Input Language	⇒ SMS input character ⇒ ● ⇒ Japanese (70char.) or English (160char.) ⇒ ●

Incoming Message Settings

Start Here ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ●

Customize E-mail Address	⇒ Custom Mail Address ⇒ ● ⇒ Follow onscreen instructions
Do Not Show Emotion Indicators	⇒ Other settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Emotion/Keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ Take the checkmark off from Disp emotion ⇒
Show Keyword Indicators	⇒ Other settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Emotion/Keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ Put a checkmark to Disp keyword ⇒ Select a keyword entry field ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When handset receives an S! Mail containing the specified keyword, a keyword indicator - appears. In case a message contains both the content that matches an emotion indicator (P. 5-6) and a specified keyword, the keyword indicator takes priority.



Delete Keywords	<p>⇒ Other settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Emotion/Keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a keyword ⇒ </p> <p>⇒ Delete keyword or Delete all keyword ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● ⇒ </p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To delete all keywords, take the checkmark off from Disp keyword.
Set Priority When Receiving Messages during Operation	<p>⇒ Other settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Receiving setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Alarm preferred or Operation preferred ⇒ ●</p>
Set Whether to Read Out Received Messages	<p>⇒ Read out setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Read out received mail ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mail is only read out while in Japanese Language Mode.
Set Voice to Read Out Messages	<p>⇒ Read out setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Select voice ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a voice type ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Mail is only read out while in Japanese Language Mode.
Set Manual Receive	<p>⇒ Other settings ⇒ ● ⇒ S! Mail settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Message Download ⇒ ● ⇒ Manual ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The entire text is receivable by user operation.

Reply Settings

Change Quotation Marks	<p> ⇒ Mail Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Other settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Header/Signature ⇒ ●</p> <p>⇒ Edit Quotation marks ⇒ ● ⇒ Edit quotation mark ⇒ ●</p>
------------------------	--

Message View Settings & Others

Start Here ⇒ **Mail Setting** ⇒ ●

Set Message List View	<p>⇒ Other settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Mail list disp. ⇒ ● ⇒ 2 lines, 1 line or 1 line+body ⇒ ● ⇒ Subject, Name or Address ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> X-large font size is unavailable when Message List view is set to 1 line or 1line+body. Size automatically switches to Large.
Play Attached Melodies Automatically	<p>⇒ Other settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Start attachment (auto) ⇒ ● ⇒ ON ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Automatic play only for received mail.
Set Number of Text Lines to Scroll	<p>⇒ Other settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Scroll ⇒ ● ⇒ 1 line, 3 lines or 5 lines ⇒ ●</p>
Set Font Size of Text	<p>⇒ Character input set ⇒ ● ⇒ Font size ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When set to X-large, Mail list disp. becomes set to 2 lines.



Check Mail Settings	⇒ <i>Other settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Check settings</i> ⇒ ●
Reset Mail Settings	⇒ <i>Other settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Reset</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ●

SMS Server Settings

Start Here  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Connection Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **SMS center selection** ⇒ ●

Change SMS Center Address	⇒ 819066519300 ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter SMS Center address ⇒ ● ⇒ International or Unknown ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Address is 819066519300 by default. SMS may become unavailable if Center address is changed.
Reset to SoftBank SMS Center Address	⇒ Reset ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●



Internet

Start Here for Yahoo! Keitai Press and hold → **Browser Settings** → ●

Start Here for PC Site Browser Press and hold → **PC Site Browser** → ● → **PC Site Brw. Settings** → ●

Set Scroll Unit/Speed	⇒ <i>Scroll</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Whole Page, Half Page</i> or <i>Single Line</i> ⇒ ●
Set Whether to Show Images or Play Melodies	⇒ <i>Downloads</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Display Images</i> or <i>Play Sounds</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ●
Clear Cache	⇒ <i>Memory Manager</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Delete Cache</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ●
Delete Cookies	⇒ <i>Memory Manager</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Delete Cookies</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ●
Initialize Memory Status of Internet	⇒ <i>Initialized Browser</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ●
Set Whether to Send Manufacture Number	⇒ <i>Security</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Manufacture Number</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ●
Set Whether to Send Referer	⇒ <i>Security</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Send Referer</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ●

Enable/Disable Cookies	⇒ <i>Security</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Cookie Settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an option ⇒ ●
Set Whether to Activate Scripts	⇒ <i>Security</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Script Settings</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an option ⇒ ●
Check Internet Settings	⇒ <i>Check Settings</i> or <i>Check PC Site Brw. Set</i> ⇒ ●
Reset Internet Settings	⇒ <i>Reset</i> or <i>Reset PC Site Brw. Set</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>YES</i> ⇒ ●

Yahoo! Keitai

Start Here Press and hold → **Browser Settings** → ●

Set Font Size	⇒ <i>Font Size</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●
Set Flash® Sound On/Off	⇒ <i>Downloads</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>Flash Sound Effect</i> ⇒ ● ⇒ <i>ON</i> or <i>OFF</i> ⇒ ●



PC Site Browser

Start Here Press and hold ⇒ **PC Site Browser** ⇒ ● ⇒ **PC Site Brw. Settings** ⇒ ●

Do Not Show Alert When Activating PC Site Browser & Switching Browsers	⇒ Warning Messages ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ●
Set Page Layout	⇒ Display Mode Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ PC Screen or Small Screen ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●

S! Quick News

Start Here Press and hold ⇒ **S! Quick News** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Automatic Updates for S! Quick News	⇒ Auto Refresh ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an item ⇒ ● ⇒ Select update interval, ON or OFF ⇒ ● (twice)
Hide S! Quick News in Standby	⇒ Standby Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Standby Disp. Set. ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ● (twice)
Set Ticker Speed	⇒ Standby Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Speed Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Fast, Normal or Slow ⇒ ● (twice)
Set Information to appear in S! Quick News	⇒ Standby Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Unread & Read Set. ⇒ ● ⇒ Unread Only or Unread & Read ⇒ ● (twice)
Hide S! Quick News Images	⇒ Set Image Disp. ⇒ ● ⇒ OFF ⇒ ● (twice)
Reset S! Quick News Registered Contents	⇒ Del. Quick News ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● (twice) ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● (three times)



S! Info Channel

Start Here Press and hold → **S! Info Ch./Weather** → ●
→ **Settings** → ●

Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information	→ S! Information Notif. → ● → ON or OFF → ●
Set Font Size for Web Pages	→ Font Size → ● → Select font size → ●

Weather Indicators

Start Here Press and hold → **S! Info Ch./Weather** → ●
→ **Weather Indicator** → ● → **Settings** → ●
●

Set Whether to Automatically Update Weather Information	→ Weather Update → ● → ON or OFF → ● (→ YES → ●)
Set Whether to Display Weather Indicators in Standby	→ Standby Setting → ● → ON or OFF → ●

Set Whether to Display Desktop Icon For New Received Information

→ **Weather Notif.** → ● → **ON** or **OFF** → ●

Transmission

Set Preference for When Location Info is Requested

→ **Settings** → ● → **Other settings** → ●
→ **Send Location Info** → ● → **Enter handset code** → ● → **Confirm, Send, or Not Send** → ●
• Information unretrievable when set to **Not Send**.



Channel List

Start Here ⇒ **TV/Music** ⇒ ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **Channel List** ⇒

Change Title of Channel List	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒ ⇒ Edit Title ⇒ ⇒ Edit title ⇒
Delete a Channel List	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒ ⇒ Delete this ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The currently used channel list cannot be deleted.
Assign Channels to Remote Control Numbers	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒ ⇒ ⇒ Remote Control No. ⇒ ⇒ Select a remote control number ⇒ ⇒ Select a channel ⇒ ⇒ Repeat the same step ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒
Delete a Channel	⇒ Select a channel list ⇒ ⇒ Select a channel ⇒ ⇒ Delete this ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Delete a channel from any channel list except for the currently used list.

Image & Sound

Start Here ⇒ **TV/Music** ⇒ ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ⇒ **User Settings** ⇒

Set Subtitle Display	⇒ Subtitles ⇒ ⇒ ON (Wide:Bottom), ON (Wide:Top) or OFF ⇒
Show/Hide Icons in Landscape View	⇒ Icon Always Show ⇒ ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒
Save Battery by Dimming Backlight	⇒ TV Power Saving ⇒ ⇒ YES ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Following these steps when TV Power Saving is on will cancel TV Power Saving.
Set Sound On While Handset Closed	⇒ TV Sound While Closed ⇒ ⇒ ON ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> When set to ON and handset is closed, a page connected from data broadcast automatically updates. Packet transmission fees apply.
Keep Backlight On When Viewing TV	⇒ Display Light ⇒ ⇒ Constant Light ⇒ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TV Power Saving must be off to set Display Light.
Set Backlight Duration for Viewing TV	⇒ Display Light ⇒ ⇒ Lighting Duration ⇒ ⇒ Enter lighting time <ul style="list-style-type: none"> TV Power Saving must be off to set Display Light.



Data Broadcasts

Start Here  ⇒ **TV/Music** ⇒ ● ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ● ⇒ **User Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Data BC Settings** ⇒ ●

Set Whether to Show Images in Pages Accessed from Data Broadcasts	⇒ Set Image Disp. ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●
Enable/Disable Sound Effects of Data Broadcasts	⇒ Sound Effect ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●
Show Confirmation Window Again	⇒ Reset Disp. Set. ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●

Recording Programs

Continue/End Recording at Low Battery	 ⇒ TV/Music ⇒ ● ⇒ TV ⇒ ● ⇒ User Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Rec. While Low Battery ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●
---------------------------------------	--

Other Settings

Start Here  ⇒ **TV/Music** ⇒ ● ⇒ **TV** ⇒ ● ⇒ **User Settings** ⇒ ●

Check TV Settings	⇒ Check TV Settings ⇒ ●
Reset Channel Settings	⇒ Reset Channel Setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
Clear Data Broadcast Memory	⇒ Reset Storage Area ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an affiliated station ⇒  ⇒ Delete this or Delete all ⇒ ● (⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ●) ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
Reset TV Settings	⇒ Reset TV Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●



Camera/Video Settings

Set Shutter Sound	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) ⇨ [Fn] ⇨ Shutter Sound ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a shutter sound ⇨ ●
Set Interval for Continuous Shooting	[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-9) ⇨ [Fn] ⇨ Interval/Number ⇨ ● ⇨ Shot interval ⇨ ● ⇨ 0.5 seconds, 1.0 seconds or 2.0 seconds ⇨ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • <i>Shot interval</i> is available when <i>CHG Camera-mode</i> (P. 7-6) is set to <i>A-Continuous mode</i>.
Set Number of Shots for Continuous Shooting	[Continuous Shooting Viewfinder] (P. 7-9) ⇨ [Fn] ⇨ Interval/Number ⇨ ● ⇨ Shot number ⇨ ● ⇨ Enter Shot Number ⇨ ●

File Storage

Set Storage Location for Shot Still Images/Videos	[Photo Viewfinder] (P. 7-5)/[Video Viewfinder] (P. 7-7) ⇨ [Fn] ⇨ Select to save ⇨ ● ⇨ Phone or microSD ⇨ ● ⇨ Select a folder ⇨ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To save videos on memory card, select a folder of Inbox.
---	---



Playback Window

Change Design of Playback Window	[Music Player Playback] window (P. 9-5) ⇨ ⇨ Action setting ⇨ ⇨ Change Skin ⇨ ⇨ Select a design ⇨
Set Image Display Size	[Video Player Playback] window (P. 9-5) ⇨ ⇨ Action setting ⇨ ⇨ Set image disp. ⇨ ⇨ Normal or Fit in display ⇨ <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Available when playing in Normal Screen mode.

When Running S! Appli

Start Here ⇨ S! Appli ⇨ ⇨ Settings ⇨	
Set Sound Volume	⇨ Sound/Vib Settings ⇨ ⇨ Volume ⇨ ⇨ to adjust volume ⇨
Set Vibration	⇨ Sound/Vib Settings ⇨ ⇨ Vibration ⇨ ⇨ ON or OFF ⇨
Set Backlight	⇨ Backlight Settings ⇨ ⇨ Switch ON/OFF ⇨ ⇨ Always ON, Always OFF or Link To Phone Set. ⇨
Set Blinking of Backlight	⇨ Backlight Settings ⇨ ⇨ Blink ⇨ ⇨ ON or OFF ⇨

Start Here ⇨ **S! Appli** ⇨ ⇨ **S! Appli List** ⇨

Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Connect to Network	⇨ Select an S! Appli ⇨ ⇨ Security Settings ⇨ ⇨ Net Access ⇨ ⇨ All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time or Disable ⇨
Allow/Prohibit S! Appli to Write Personal Information	⇨ Select an S! Appli ⇨ ⇨ Security Settings ⇨ ⇨ Write/Del User Data ⇨ ⇨ All Permit, Prompt at 1st only, Prompt each time or Disable ⇨
Reset Security Settings of S! Appli	⇨ Select an S! Appli ⇨ ⇨ Security Settings ⇨ ⇨ Reset Security Set. ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨

S! Appli

Start Here ⇨ **S! Appli** ⇨ ⇨ **Settings** ⇨

Reset S! Appli Settings	⇨ Reset ⇨ ⇨ Set to Default ⇨ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨
Delete All S! Appli	⇨ Reset ⇨ ⇨ Delete All S! App ⇨ ⇨ Enter Security Code ⇨ ⇨ YES ⇨



Other Settings

Text Entry

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Character/Font** ⇒ ●
 ⇒ **Char.Input** ⇒ ●

Set Text Input Method	⇒ Input mode ⇒ ● ⇒ Select an input method ⇒ ●
Set Word Prediction	⇒ Prediction ⇒ ● ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●
Set to Show T9 Suggestion Words in Kanji or Hiragana	⇒ T9 change mode ⇒ ● ⇒ T9 Kanji change mode or T9 Kana change mode ⇒ ●
Clear Learning History	⇒ Clear learned ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ T9/Expect words/Pic. or Kana/Kanji change/face ⇒ ●
Change Font Size	⇒ CHG input size ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a size ⇒ ●

Shortcut Key

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ●

Change Function Assigned to Shortcut Key	⇒ Shortcut-key setting ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a function ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Alternatively, press and hold in Standby to set Shortcut-key setting. To return to original settings, press , select Reset Shortcut-key, and press ●.
--	---

Handset Opening Operation

Set Handset Opening Operation when Call Arrives, for Missed Call or New Message	⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Other settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Setting when opened ⇒ ● ⇒ Select action to enable ⇒ ● ⇒
---	--

Vibrator

Set Level	⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Ring Tone/Vibrator ⇒ ● ⇒ Vibration level ⇒ ● ⇒ HIGH or LOW ⇒ ●
-----------	--



Other Settings

Closed Illumination

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Illumination** ⇒ ● ⇒
Closed illum. ⇒ ● ⇒ **ON** ⇒ ●

Set Flashing Color for Handset Close	⇒ Set illumination ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●
Set Flashing Pattern for Handset Close	⇒ Set pattern ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a pattern ⇒ ●

Key Backlight

Set Key Backlight Color	⇒ Settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Illumination ⇒ ● ⇒ Key backlight ⇒ ● ⇒ Select a color ⇒ ●
-------------------------	---

Osaifu-Keitai®

Set Illumination and Vibrator for IC Card	⇒ Tools ⇒ ● ⇒ Osaifu-Keitai ⇒ ● ⇒ IC Card notice set. ⇒ ● ⇒ Illumination or Vibrator ⇒ ON or OFF ⇒ ●
---	--

Delete all Lifestyle-
 Appli ⇒ **S! Appli** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒
Reset ⇒ ● ⇒ **Delete All LifeApp** ⇒ ● ⇒
 ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ **YES** ⇒ ●

Resetting Handset

Start Here ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ● ⇒ **Other Settings** ⇒ ●

Reset All Settings to Default	⇒ Reset settings ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ●
Initialize Handset to Default Status	⇒ Initialize ⇒ ● ⇒ Enter Security Code ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● ⇒ YES ⇒ ● <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the initialization is completed, handset automatically shuts down and restarts. • When handset is initialized, all data downloaded and saved on handset are deleted and cannot be restored. • Your Security Code will also be reset to default.

Appendix



Multitask Combinations	14-2
Software Update	14-4
Updating Software	14-4
Troubleshooting	14-6
Text Entry Key Assignments	14-10
In 5-touch Mode	14-10
In 2-touch Mode	14-11
In T9 Input Mode	14-12
Kuten Code List	14-13
Weather Indicators	14-19
Menu List	14-20
Specifications	14-36
Main Specifications	14-36
Handset Materials	14-37
Maximum Number of Storable Items	14-38
Memory Card Folders & Files	14-39
Index	14-41
Warranty & After Sales Service	14-52
Warranty	14-52
After Sales Service	14-52
Customer Service	14-53

14



Multitask Combinations

The following table shows combinations of functions that can be used simultaneously to multitask.

● The following indications may not apply depending on the function status and combination.

Function Currently Active Function		Mail	Yahoo! Keitai	S! Appli	Settings/Optional Services	Data Folder	Tools	Phone Book	Own Data	Camera	TV	Music	Original Menu	Group
Mail		×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Mail Group
Yahoo! Keitai		○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Yahoo! Keitai Group
S! Appli		○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	S! Appli Group
Settings/Optional Services		○	○	○	×	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	Settings Group
Data Folder		○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	Data Folder
Tools		○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	Tools Group
Phone Book		○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	
Own Data		○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	
Camera		○	○	○	○	×	×	×	×	×	○	○	○	



Multitask Combinations

Function Currently Active Function		Mail	Yahoo! Keitai	S! Appli	Settings/ Optional Services	Data Folder	Tools	Phone Book	Own Data	Camera	TV	Music	Original Menu	Group
TV		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	TV & Music Group
Music		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	
During a Voice Call		○	○	×	×	×	○	○	○	×	×	×	○	Voice Call
During a Video Call		×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	×	Video Call
During Packet Transmission with a PC Connected		○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	○	×	×	○	External Connection

○ : Can be activated.
 × : Cannot be activated.



Software Update

Check if software on handset needs to be updated, and update it through the network if necessary.

- Before updating software, turn off handset and restart it to make sure that all handset functions have ended.
- Disconnect the USB cable from handset. The software update, if it is done with the USB cable connected, may not be properly completed.
- No transmission fees apply to check or update software.
- Updating software may take 30 minutes or so. Wait for the software update to finish before using handset.
- Make sure battery is sufficiently charged before updating software.
- Update software in a location of good signal reception. Do not change locations while updating software.
- Other handset functions are available once the software update is completed.
- Data saved on handset is retained when you update software. However, data may be lost depending on the handset condition (e.g. a malfunction). We recommend that you make backups of important data (though it may be impossible to back up some downloaded data) before updating software. SoftBank is not liable for any data loss.

- Never remove battery or USIM Card or turn off handset while updating software.
- If software update fails, handset may become inoperable. If this happens, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance (P. 14-53).

Updating Software

- 1 ⇒ **Settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒ ⇒ **Software Update** ⇒
- 2 **Software Update** ⇒



- 3 Follow onscreen instructions

After Software is Updated

After update, handset restarts and update status appears.



Update Status

Note

- If handset does not restart after updating, remove and reinsert Battery, and turn handset on again. If handset still does not restart, call Softbank Mobile Customer Center (P. 14-53).



Software Update

Checking Update Results

- 1  ⇒ **Settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Other settings** ⇒  ⇒ **Software Update** ⇒ 
- 2 **Update Result** ⇒ 

Using Regular Updates

A confirmation for software update appears at the scheduled time. Press  or leave handset for a while to start automatic software update.

- If other functions are being used at the scheduled time, software update cannot start. End all functions to open the software update confirmation window (if you keep using other functions for more than ten minutes after a scheduled time, software update is canceled).



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot turn on handset.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-15
	Is battery exhausted?	P. 1-23
Handset is slow to turn on.	It takes time if there are large amounts of data (e.g., Phone Book entries) saved on handset.	-
Cannot charge battery. Charging Indicator does not light up.	Is battery properly installed?	P. 1-15
	Is AC Charger plugged into an outlet properly?	P. 1-17
	Is the connector of AC Charger correctly inserted into handset?	
	Is AC Charger the specified ZTDAA1? Battery may not charge properly with non-specified charger.	
Battery drains too fast.	Battery service life may be over. Battery lifespan may be shortened by environmental factors.	P. 1-15
	Battery operation time will vary depending on handset operations or settings.	
	When Quake Alert setting is ON , continuous standby time will decrease by half or more.	P. 5-9

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Cannot make calls.	Is handset out of service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Is a maximum call cost limit set?	P. 13-13
Cannot make calls using Keypad.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is Dial/Sending Mail specified to be locked in Original (Dial) Lock mode?	P. 4-3
	Is Restrict Dialing set?	P. 2-21
A message informs you the number is not in service.	Did you include the area code when dialing a phone number?	-
Busy tone always sounds for outgoing call.	Does Network is busy at this moment <i>Please try again later</i> appear in Display?	-
Cannot receive calls. Incoming ringtone does not sound.	Is handset in Emission OFF Mode ?	P. 4-5
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-21
	Is Ring Volume set to Silent ?	P. 13-8



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
The other party's voice is difficult to hear.	Is the earpiece properly placed against your ear?	-
	Is anything obstructing the speaker if it is in handsfree mode?	-
	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8, P. 3-16
The other party's voice is too loud.	Is the earpiece volume properly adjusted?	P. 3-3, P. 3-8, P. 3-16
Handset response to key presses is slow.	This may occur when there are large amounts of data saved on handset, or when large amounts of data are being transferred between handset and memory card.	-
Cannot hear key operation tones.	Is Keypad Sound set to OFF ?	P. 13-10
	Is handset in Manner Mode?	P. 1-21
Side Key is inoperable when handset is closed.	Is Keypad Lock active?	P. 4-4
	Is Side key guard set to ON ?	P. 1-24

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Display is blank.	Is Power Saver Mode activated?	P. 13-5
	If handset is left in a very hot place, it may automatically shut down. If this happens, move handset to a location at an appropriate temperature (5 to 35 °C) and wait for a while until the keys become operable again.	-
Display is hard to see.	Is Brightness under Backlight set to Dark ?	P. 13-5
	Is Privacy Angle set to ON ?	P. 13-4
Display backlight does not light.	Is Lighting under Backlight set to OFF ?	P. 13-5
Nothing appears in External Display.	Is Indicator Display set to OFF ?	P. 13-8
Message appears when opening an image, video or song file.	The image, video or song is unavailable with the function being used when any of the following messages appear. Not available and No preview data	-
 appears instead of an image or preview.	The image file may be corrupted.	-
Clock in Flash® wallpaper does not update.	Is Keypad Lock activated?	P. 4-3



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
Images shot with handset camera flicker.	When shooting images indoors, flicker may occur due to fluorescent lighting, etc. Changing the <i>Flicker</i> setting may help reduce flicker.	P. 7-12
Images/videos shot on handset are too bright.	Were the still images or videos shot with <i>Flicker</i> not set to <i>Auto</i> ? Set <i>Flicker</i> to <i>Auto</i> .	P. 7-12
Images/videos shot on handset are blurred.	Set Macro Switch properly.	P. 7-4
	Select a Photo Mode suited to the subject or scene.	P. 7-5, P. 7-7
Cannot watch TV.	Is handset out of the digital terrestrial broadcast service area or in a location with a weak signal?	-
	Are the channel settings done?	P. 8-3
Cannot use S! Appli.	Has different USIM Card been inserted? An S! Appli that has been activated is unavailable after a different USIM Card is inserted. To activate with a different USIM Card inserted, initialize handset. Downloaded S! Appli need to be downloaded again.	-
<i>Insert USIM</i> appears.	USIM Card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 1-14

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
<i>Insert microSD</i> appears.	Memory card is not properly inserted or may be damaged.	P. 11-10
<i>Replace with a new one or check the disk</i> appears.	Perform a scan disk on memory card.	P. 11-16
<i>Network is busy at this moment Please try again later</i> appears.	This may be due to errors or heavy traffic on the voice call lines or packet transmission network. Try again after a while. Emergency calls to 110, 119 and 118 are still possible.	-
<i>Function cannot operate any more</i> appears.	End one of the currently active functions to continue operation.	-
<i>Other function active Cannot start</i> appears.	These messages appear when you try to use an unavailable function when another function is active.	-
<i>Other function active Cannot operate</i> appears.		
<i>Memory shortage</i> appears.	This message appears when operation is interrupted due to insufficient memory. Reboot handset.	-



Troubleshooting

Problem	Possible Cause & Remedy	Refer to
<i>Connection failed</i> appears.	Network connection is interrupted due to weak signal.	-
	The page you are trying to access is very busy. Try again after a while.	-
 (microSD card indicator marked with ?) appears.	The indicator appears when a defective memory card is inserted.	P. 11-16
Osaifu-Keitai® cannot be used.	Was handset left uncharged for a long period after the battery ran out?	P. 1-23
	Has IC Card Lock or Call Remote Lock been set?	P. 10-4



Text Entry Key Assignments

In 5-touch Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode	Number Entry Mode
[1]	あいうえおあいうえお	アイウエオアイウエオ	. @ / ? ! () , - _ : ' ~ ¹ & ¥ 1 space	1
[2]	かきくけこ	カキクケコ	abcABC2	2
[3]	さしすせそ	サシスセソ	defDEF3	3
[4]	たちつてとっ	タチツテトッ	ghiGHI4	4
[5]	なにぬねの	ナニヌネノ	jklJKL5	5
[6]	はひふへほ	ハヒフヘホ	mnoMNO6	6
[7]	まみむめも	マミムメモ	pqrPQRS7	7
[8]	やゆよやゆよ	ヤユヨヤユヨ	tuvTUV8	8
[9]	らりるれろ	ラリルレロ	wxyzWXYZ9	9
[0]	わをんわー	ワヲンー ²	Space 0	0 + ³
[*]	ゝ ・ 45	ゝ ・ 45	4 5	* ⁵
[#]	ゝ ・ ? ! ・ Space ⁶	ゝ ・ ? ! ・ Space ⁷	.ne.jp .co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https:// @softbank.ne.jp ⁸	#

- 1 Appears as "ー" during double-byte entry.
- 2 The lower case of "ワ" can be entered in double-byte mode.
- 3 Press and hold [0] in Phone Number Entry window to enter "+."
- 4 Can be toggled between upper case and lower case.
- 5 Press and hold to insert line feed "↵."
- 6 Cannot be entered when entering readings in Own Dictionary.
- 7 Only space can be entered when entering readings in USIM Phone Book.
- 8 Do not appear in double-byte mode.



Text Entry Key Assignments

In 2-touch Mode

In Double-byte Mode

Key	Press Next										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
Press First	1	あ	い	う	え	お	A	B	C	D	E
		あ	い	う	え	お	a	b	c	d	e
	2	か	き	く	け	こ	F	G	H	I	J
							f	g	h	i	j
	3	さ	し	す	せ	そ	K	L	M	N	O
							k	l	m	n	o
	4	た	ち	つ	て	と	P	Q	R	S	T
				っ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	な	に	ぬ	ね	の	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
6	は	ひ	ふ	へ	ほ	Z	?	!	-	/	
						z					
7	ま	み	む	め	も	¥	&			¹	
8	や	(ゆ)	よ	*	#			¹ ²	
	や		ゆ		よ						
9	ら	り	る	れ	ろ	1	2	3	4	5	
0	わ	を	ん	³	³	6	7	8	9	0	
	わ		、	。							

In Single-byte Mode

Key	Press Next										
	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	0	
Press First	1	ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	A	B	C	D	E
		ア	イ	ウ	エ	オ	a	b	c	d	e
	2	カ	キ	ク	ケ	コ	F	G	H	I	J
							f	g	h	i	j
	3	サ	シ	ス	セ	ソ	K	L	M	N	O
							k	l	m	n	o
	4	タ	チ	ツ	テ	ト	P	Q	R	S	T
				ッ			p	q	r	s	t
	5	ナ	ニ	ヌ	ネ	ノ	U	V	W	X	Y
							u	v	w	x	y
6	ハ	ヒ	フ	ヘ	ホ	Z	?	!	-	/	
						z					
7	マ	ミ	ム	メ	モ	\	&			¹	
8	ヤ	(ユ)	ヨ	*	#			¹ ²	
	ヤ		ユ		ヨ						
9	ラ	リ	ル	レ	ロ	1	2	3	4	5	
	@	/	-	_	:	.ne.jp	.co.jp	ac.jp	@softbank.ne.jp		
0	ワ	ヲ	ン	、	。	6	7	8	9	0	
	-	,				www	.com	.html	http://	https://	

- Katakana are entered in double-byte mode when entering readings in USIM Phone Book.

- Press after entering a character to switch upper and lower case.

- 1 Can be entered when entering pictographs is possible, such as in Text Memo and Common Phrases.
- 2 Press to toggle between upper-case and lower-case modes.
- 3 In double-byte mode, “ ” or “ ” appears for characters that can have “ ” or “ ”. A space appears when entering “ ” or “ ” for other characters.

: A space is entered for these key combinations.



Text Entry Key Assignments

In T9 Input Mode

Key	Kanji/hiragana Entry Mode	Katakana Entry Mode	Alphanumeric Entry Mode
[1]	Row あ, 1	Row ア, 1	. @ / ? ! () , - _ : ' ~ ^ 1 & ¥ 1 space
[2]	Row か, 2	Row カ, 2	abcABC2
[3]	Row さ, 3	Row サ, 3	defDEF3
[4]	Row た, 4	Row タ, 4	ghiGHI4
[5]	Row な, 5	Row ナ, 5	jkIJKL5
[6]	Row は, 6	Row ハ, 6	mnoMNO6
[7]	Row ま, 7	Row マ, 7	pqrPQRS7
[8]	Row や, 8	Row ヤ, 8	tuvTUV8
[9]	Row ら, 9	Row ラ, 9	wxyzWXYZ9
[0]	わをん わー, 0	ワヲン ワ ² ー, 0	0
[*]	3 4	3 4	4
[#]	5	5	.ne.jp co.jp .ac.jp www. .com .html http:// https://@softbank.ne.jp ⁶

• For key assignments in number entry mode, see the table in "In 5-touch Mode."

• Numbers do not appear when entering readings in USIM Phone Book or Own Dictionary.

• Press [✳] to toggle the case as follows: Caps-lock cancel mode → Shift mode → Caps Lock mode

• Caps Lock mode: All characters are entered in upper case.

Shift mode: The first characters of words are capitalized and the rest of characters are entered in lower case.

Caps-lock cancel mode: All characters are entered in lower case.

• Once characters entered in Shift mode have been determined, the mode is switched to Caps-lock cancel mode.

1 "ー" is entered in double-byte mode.

2 The lower case of "ワ" can only be entered in double-byte mode.

3 When editing a reading, pressing [✳] adds/cancels " " or "° ."

4 Press and hold to insert line feed " ↓ ."

5 "、" "。" "、" " ? " " ! " " " . " and "(space)" appear right after a reading or character is determined.

6 Do not appear in double-byte mode.



Kuten Code List

1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes								
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
323	西	脛	籍	接	蟬	扇	扇	扇	扇	329	挑	蝶	抄	390	如	尿	菲	任	妊	忍	認	422	屏	頁	變	弁			
324	誠	隻	績	撰	仙	撰	旋	旋	旋	330	張	眺	長	391	ぬ	の						423	丙	閉	篋	使			
325	請	惜	費	切	干	柁	柁	柁	柁	331	微	脹	鳥	392	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	424	併	米	偏	婉			
327	近	厥	赤	砒	古	泉	泉	泉	泉	332	懲	陽	勅	393	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	425	兵	米	偏	婉			
328	醒	斤	跡	跡	宣	宣	宣	宣	宣	363	懲	陽	勅	394	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	426	屏	頁	變	弁			
329	青	昔	蹟	蹟	專	專	專	專	專	364	張	眺	長	395	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	427	併	米	偏	婉			
329	靜	祈	碩	雪	尖	尖	尖	尖	尖	365	懲	陽	勅	396	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	428	併	米	偏	婉			
330	齋	席	脊	折	先	柁	柁	柁	柁	366	懲	陽	勅	397	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	429	併	米	偏	婉			
331	誠	隻	績	撰	仙	撰	旋	旋	旋	367	懲	陽	勅	398	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	430	併	米	偏	婉			
332	選	全								368	懲	陽	勅	399	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	431	併	米	偏	婉			
332										369	懲	陽	勅	400	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	432	併	米	偏	婉			
333	曾	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	370	懲	陽	勅	401	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	433	併	米	偏	婉			
334	楚	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	371	懲	陽	勅	402	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	434	併	米	偏	婉			
335	狙	訴	壯	擗	爭	擗	擗	擗	擗	372	懲	陽	勅	403	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	435	併	米	偏	婉			
336	疏	阻	爽	捶	撲	撲	撲	撲	撲	373	懲	陽	勅	404	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	436	併	米	偏	婉			
337	曾	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	374	懲	陽	勅	405	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	437	併	米	偏	婉			
338	楚	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	375	懲	陽	勅	406	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	438	併	米	偏	婉			
339	狙	訴	壯	擗	爭	擗	擗	擗	擗	376	懲	陽	勅	407	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	439	併	米	偏	婉			
340	疏	阻	爽	捶	撲	撲	撲	撲	撲	377	懲	陽	勅	408	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	440	併	米	偏	婉			
341	曾	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	378	懲	陽	勅	409	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	441	併	米	偏	婉			
342	楚	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	379	懲	陽	勅	410	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	442	併	米	偏	婉			
343	狙	訴	壯	擗	爭	擗	擗	擗	擗	380	懲	陽	勅	411	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	443	併	米	偏	婉			
344	疏	阻	爽	捶	撲	撲	撲	撲	撲	381	懲	陽	勅	412	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	444	併	米	偏	婉			
345	曾	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	382	懲	陽	勅	413	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	445	併	米	偏	婉			
346	楚	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	383	懲	陽	勅	414	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	446	併	米	偏	婉			
347	狙	訴	壯	擗	爭	擗	擗	擗	擗	384	懲	陽	勅	415	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	447	併	米	偏	婉			
348	疏	阻	爽	捶	撲	撲	撲	撲	撲	385	懲	陽	勅	416	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	448	併	米	偏	婉			
349	曾	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	386	懲	陽	勅	417	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	449	併	米	偏	婉			
350	楚	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	387	懲	陽	勅	418	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	450	併	米	偏	婉			
351	狙	訴	壯	擗	爭	擗	擗	擗	擗	388	懲	陽	勅	419	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	451	併	米	偏	婉			
352	疏	阻	爽	捶	撲	撲	撲	撲	撲	389	懲	陽	勅	420	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	襦	452	併	米	偏	婉			
353	曾	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇																				
354	楚	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇																				
355	狙	訴	壯	擗	爭	擗	擗	擗	擗																				
356	疏	阻	爽	捶	撲	撲	撲	撲	撲																				
357	曾	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇																				
358	楚	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇	蘇																				



Kuten Code List

1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes									1st-3rd digits	Fourth digit of Kuten codes																		
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8		9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7		8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6		7	8	9	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9						
448	厄	役	約	藥	訊	躍	蜻	嶺	數	476										517										558	協	恆	恍	忪	恃	怵	怵	怵	恚	559	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵
449	鐘									477										518										559	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
449	愉	愈	癒	癒	癒	癒	癒	癒	癒	478										519										560	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
450	憂	輸	有	油	優	勇	友	有	幽	479										520										561	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
451	憂	輸	有	油	優	勇	友	有	幽	480										521										562	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
452	悠	祐								481										522										563	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
452	余	搖	羊	嘗	預	備	妖	予	庸	482										523										564	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
453	養	慈	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	483										524										565	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
454	養	慈	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	484										525										566	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
455	養	慈	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	485										526										567	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
456	養	慈	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	486										527										568	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
456	養	慈	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	487										528										569	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
456	養	慈	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	488										529										570	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
456	養	慈	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	489										530										571	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
456	養	慈	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	欲	490										531										572	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
458	螺	裸	來	精	雷	洛	絡	羅	羅	491										532										573	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
458	亂	卵	嵐	瀾	藍	覽	覽	覽	覽	492										533										574	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
458	履	李	梨	理	瑞	律	立	利	利	493										534										575	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
459	履	李	梨	理	瑞	律	立	利	利	494										535										576	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
459	履	李	梨	理	瑞	律	立	利	利	495										536										577	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
461	律	掠	略	理	流	流	流	流	流	496										537										578	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
462	律	掠	略	理	流	流	流	流	流	497										538										579	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
463	律	掠	略	理	流	流	流	流	流	498										539										580	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
464	律	掠	略	理	流	流	流	流	流	499										540										581	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
465	律	掠	略	理	流	流	流	流	流	500										541										582	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
466	瑤	豐	淋	累	令	伶	冷	勵	勵	501										542										583	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
467	韻	怡	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	502										543										584	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
468	韻	怡	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	503										544										585	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
469	韻	怡	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	504										545										586	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
470	韻	怡	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	505										546										587	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
470	韻	怡	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	506										547										588	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
470	韻	怡	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	507										548										589	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
470	韻	怡	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	歷	508										549										590	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
471	露	勞	婁	呂	魯	魯	魯	魯	魯	509										550										591	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
471	露	勞	婁	呂	魯	魯	魯	魯	魯	510										551										592	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
472	助	狼	老	老	老	老	老	老	老	511										552										593	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
473	助	狼	老	老	老	老	老	老	老	512										553										594	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
473	助	狼	老	老	老	老	老	老	老	513										554										595	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
473	助	狼	老	老	老	老	老	老	老	514										555										596	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
474	粹	鷺	互	互	互	互	互	互	互	515										556										597	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										
475	腕	腕	腕	腕	腕	腕	腕	腕	腕	516										557										598	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵	悵										



Weather Indicators

Normally Displayed	
	Clear (Day)
	Clear (Night)
	Cloudy
	Rain
	Snow
	Thunder and Lighting
	0% Chance of Rain
	10% Chance of Rain
	20% Chance of Rain
	30% Chance of Rain
	40% Chance of Rain
	50% Chance of Rain
	60% Chance of Rain
	70% Chance of Rain
	80% Chance of Rain
	90% Chance of Rain
	100% Chance of Rain
	Later
	Partial

Pollen Level	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Extremely High

Sakura Blossoms	
	Budding
	Near Full Bloom
	Peak Blossom
	Past Peak

Autumn Foliage	
	No Color
	Moderate Color
	Peak Color
	Past Peak

UV Level	
	Low
	Moderate
	High
	Very High

Typhoon	
	Forming
	Approaching
	Emergency Status

Disaster	
	Heavy Rain
	Strong Winds

Topic	
	Notification



Menu List

- This menu list is for handset set to **Big Character Menu**. Menus appear differently for **Basic Menu**, **Simple Menu**, or other setting.
- Enter menu item numbers for direct menu access. Note that menu theme must be set to **Basic**.
- See "Check Default Style Mode Settings" (P. 13-3) for menu items whose default settings differ according to the model color.

Phone

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Tomo-Den	—	—	—	P. 3-12
Phonebook	—	—	—	P. 2-17
Add to phonebook	—	—	—	P. 2-18
Dialed Calls	—	—	—	P. 3-10
Received Calls	—	24	—	P. 3-10
Answering Machine	Play/Erase Msg.	—	—	P. 3-4, P. 3-18
	Play/Erase VC Msg.	—	—	P. 3-5
	Answering Machine	55	OFF	P. 3-4
Account Details	—	0	—	P. 1-23
Check Phone setting	—	—	See "Check Phone setting under Phone" (P. 14-28)	—

Mail

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Inbox	—	—	—	P. 5-6
Outbox	—	—	—	P. 5-12
Draft	—	—	—	P. 5-23
Compose Message	—	—	—	P. 5-3
Templates	—	—	—	P. 5-19
Compose SMS	—	—	—	P. 5-5



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Check Mail	Retrieve New	—	—	P. 5-20
	Server Mail	—	—	P. 5-7, P. 5-20
Mail Setting	—	—	See "Mail Setting under Mail" (P. 14-30)	—

Yahoo! Keitai

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3
Bookmark	—	—	—	P. 6-10
Saved Pages	—	—	—	P. 6-10
History/Enter URL	History	—	—	P. 6-3
	Enter URL	—	—	
PC Site Browser	—	—	See "PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai" (P. 14-32)	P. 6-5
S! Quick News	—	—	See "S! Quick News under Yahoo!Keitai" (P. 14-33)	P. 6-12
S! Info Ch./Weather	—	—	See "S! Info Ch./Weather under Yahoo!Keitai" (P. 14-33)	P. 6-13
Browser Settings	Font Size	—	Standard	P. 13-18
	Scroll	—	Single Line	P. 13-18
	Security	—	Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: Ask NW Access	
	Downloads	—	Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON, Flash Sound Effect: ON	P. 13-18
	Memory Manager	—	—	P. 13-18
	Check Settings	—	—	
	Initialized Browser	—	—	
	Reset	—	—	



Menu List

S! Appli

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Appli List	–	–	–	P. 9-8
Settings	Sound/Vib Settings	–	Volume: Level 4, Vibration: ON	P. 13-24
	Backlight Settings	–	Switch ON/OFF: Link To Phone Set., Blink: ON	
	Reset	–	–	P. 13-24
Information	–	–	–	P. 9-8

Camera

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Photo Mode	–	–	–	P. 7-5
Movie Mode	–	–	–	P. 7-7
Voice Mode	–	–	–	P. 7-10
My Picture	–	–	–	P. 11-2
Play Video/Record	–	–	–	P. 11-2
Loupe	–	–	–	P. 10-19
Bar Code Reader	–	–	–	P. 10-20
Text Reader	New	–	–	P. 10-23
	Reading data list	–	–	P. 10-23

Data Folder

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
My Picture	–	46	–	P. 11-2
Melody	–	16	–	
S! Appli	–	–	–	



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Ring Songs-Music	—	—	—	P. 11-2
Videos	—	—	—	
TV	—	—	—	

TV/Music

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
TV	Watch TV	—	—	P. 8-5
	Program Guide	—	—	P. 8-6
	List	—	—	P. 8-10
	TV Link	—	—	P. 8-13
	Channel List	—	—	P. 8-12
	Channel Settings	—	—	P. 8-3
	User Settings	—	See "User Settings for TV under TV/Music" (P. 14-34)	P. 13-21
Music	—	—	—	P. 9-5

Tools

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Alarm	—	44	—	P. 10-15
Schedule	—	45	—	P. 10-7
Calculator	—	85	—	P. 10-14
Dictionary	Enter word	—	—	P. 2-24
	Text reader	—	—	—
	Reference history	—	—	P. 2-24
Text Memo	—	42	—	P. 10-12



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Pedometer	—	—	—	P. 10-17
Loupe	—	—	—	P. 10-19
Osaifu-Keitai	Lifestyle-Appli	—	—	P. 10-2
	IC Card Lock Set.	—	IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock (Power-off): Maintain	P. 10-3
	Call Remote Lock	—	OFF	P. 10-4
	IC Card notice set.	—	Illumination: ON, Vibrator: ON	P. 13-26
To Do List	—	95	—	P. 10-10
Receive Ir Data	—	79	—	P. 12-3
Bar Code Reader	—	—	—	P. 10-20
Text Reader	New	—	—	P. 10-23
	Reading data list	—	—	P. 10-23
Life History Viewer	—	—	—	P. 10-5
Msg./VC Msg.	Play/Erase Msg.	—	—	P. 3-5, P. 3-18
	Play/Erase VC Msg.	—	—	P. 3-5
	Voice Memo	43	—	P. 10-13
Voice Announce	—	91	—	P. 13-10
microSD Manager	—	—	—	P. 11-11
USIM Operation	—	—	—	P. 2-22, P. 5-22
Forwarding Image	—	—	ON	P. 13-12



Menu List

Settings

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Ring Tone/Vibrator	Select ring tone	13	Phone: Pattern 1, Video Call: Pattern 3, Mail: You've got mail 1	P. 13-8
	Ring volume	50	All Level 5	P. 13-8
	Vibration setting	54	Phone: OFF, Video Call: OFF, Mail: OFF, IC Card notice set.: ON	P. 13-8, P. 13-26
	Vibration level	—	HIGH	P. 13-25
Display	Style Mode Setting	—	—	P. 13-3
	Stand-by display	—	See "Other Settings for Stand-by display under Display"(P. 14-34)	—
	Menu display set	57	Theme: Big Character Menu, Memory focus: OFF	P. 13-7
	Dialing/Calling disp.	—	All Flying Type	P. 13-4, P. 13-9
	Color theme/icon	86	Color theme: Depends on handset color, Soft key: Depends on handset color, Battery icon: Standard, Antenna icon: Standard	P. 13-4
	Screen effect	—	OFF	P. 13-4
	Indicator display	93	ON (Disp.clock only: OFF, Clock type: Digital 2, Time signal: ON, Called: ON, Mail: ON, Connection: ON, Display time: All-time)	P. 13-8
Other settings	—	See "Other settings for Display under Settings"(P. 14-35)	—	
Illumination	Talk	—	OFF	P. 13-13
	Incoming call	89	Color (Phone: color 2, Video Call: color 3, Mail: color 6), Pattern: Normal, Missed info: ON	P. 13-9
	Closed illum.	—	ON (Set Illumination: Color 1, Set pattern: Tempo)	P. 13-26
	Key backlight	—	Color 12	P. 13-26
	IC Card notice	—	ON	P. 13-26
Manner mode set	—	20	Manner Mode	P. 13-10



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Character/Font	Font	66	Font type: Gothic, Thickness: Bold, Character size: Separate setting (Char. Input: Large, Mail: Large, Yahoo! Keitai: Large, PC site brw.: Large, Phonebook: X-large, History data: X-large, S! Info Ch.: Large, S! Quick News: X-large)	P. 13-5
	Char. Input	35	Input mode: 5-touch, Prediction: ON, T9 change mode: T9 Kanji change mode, Clear learned: T9/Expect words/Pic., CHG input size: Large	P. 13-25
Input Support	Common Phrases	38	—	P. 2-13
	Own Dictionary	82	—	P. 2-13
	DL Dictionary	—	—	P. 2-14
Security	Function Lock	—	OFF	P. 4-3
	IC Card Lock	—	IC Card Lock: OFF, IC Lock (Power-Off): Maintain	P. 10-3
	Keypad lock	—	After folded: OFF, Timer: OFF	P. 4-4
	Reject unknown	—	Accept	P. 4-5
	Call setting w/o ID	10	Unknown, Payphone, User unset: Accept (Select ring tone: Same as ring tone, Select calling disp.: Same as display)	P. 4-5
	Emission OFF Mode	—	OFF (not set)	P. 4-5
	Change security code	29	9999	P. 1-22
	PIN setting	—	PIN1 Code Entry Set: OFF	P. 4-2
	Secret mode	40	OFF (not set)	P. 4-6
Secret data only mode	41	OFF (not set)		
Other settings	Hyper Clear Voice	—	Low	P. 13-13
	Set main time	31	Time Adjustment: Auto, Summer time: OFF	P. 13-2
	Auto power ON	—	OFF	P. 13-3
	Auto power OFF	—	OFF	
	Setting when opened	—	Answer incoming, Display new mail, Display missed call: All canceled	P. 13-25



Menu List

2nd-level Menu	3rd-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Other settings	External Connection	51,94	USB mode setting: Communication mode; Headset usage setting: Headset+speaker; Select microphone: External microphone; Auto answer setting: (Phone:OFF, Video Call:OFF)	P. 12-5, P. 13-11
	Keypad sound	30	OFF	P. 13-10
	Charge sound	—	ON	
	Side key guard	—	OFF	P. 1-24
	Shortcut-key setting	—	Tomo-Den	P. 13-25
	Alarm setting	—	Alarm preferred	P. 13-2
	Clock Alarm Tone set	—	Melody	
	Battery level	71	—	P. 1-23
	Connection Settings	—	SMS center selection: 819066519300, Certificate: All Valid	P. 1-19, P. 6-16, P. 13-17
	Send Location Info	—	Confirm	P. 13-20
	Int'l Roaming Set	—	NW search mode: Auto, Display operator name: Display OFF	P. 13-14
	Initialize	—	—	P. 13-26
	Reset settings	23	—	P. 13-26
Software Update	—	—	P. 14-4	



Menu List

Check Phone setting under Phone

3rd-level Menu	4th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Phone	Ring tone	–	Pattern 1	P. 13-8
	Ring volume	–	Level 5	
	Calling display	–	Flying Type	P. 13-4
	Dialing display	–	Flying Type	P. 13-4
	Vibrator	–	OFF	P. 13-8
	Illumination	–	Color 2	P. 13-9
Video Call	Ring tone	–	Pattern 3	P. 13-8
	Ring volume	–	Level 5	
	Calling display	–	Flying Type	P. 13-4
	Dialing display	–	Flying Type	P. 13-4
	Vibrator	–	OFF	P. 13-8
	Illumination	–	Color 3	P. 13-9
	Other settings	–	Visual preference: Normal, Select image: On hold, Auto redial as voice: OFF, Main display: Other side, Front camera reverse: ON, Hands-free switch: ON	P. 3-17, P. 13-14
Talk	Hyper Clear Voice	–	Low	P. 13-13
	Noise reduction	76	ON	
	Quality alarm	75	Not tone	
	Reconnect signal	77	Not tone	
	Illumination in talk	–	OFF	
	On hold tone	–	Tone 1	
	Setting when folded	18	End the call	



Menu List

3rd-level Menu	4th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Call Time/Charge	Call data	61	—	P. 3-11
	Set Max Cost Limit	—	Notify Setting: OFF	P. 13-13
	Reset total	60	—	P. 3-18
	Auto reset total cost	—	OFF	P. 13-13
Optional Services	Caller ID Notification	17	Activate/Deactivate: ON	P. 3-20
	Voice Mail/Divert	—	—	P. 3-14, P. 3-19
	Call Waiting	—	—	P. 3-19
	Call Barring	—	—	P. 3-20
Reject unknown	—	—	Accept	P. 4-5
Call setting w/o ID	—	10	Unknown, Payphone, User Unset: Accept (Select ring tone: Same as ring tone, Select calling disp.: Same as display)	P. 4-5
Other settings	Setting when opened	—	Answer incoming, Display new mail, Display missed call: All canceled	P. 13-25
	Answer setting	58	Any key answer	P. 13-9
	Disp. phonebook image	—	ON	P. 13-9
	Ring time (sec.)	90	Set mute seconds: OFF, Missed calls display: Display	P. 4-5
	Info notice setting	65	ON	P. 3-11, P. 13-10
	Disp. call/receive No.	—	Differs according to the model color.	P. 13-10
	Pause dial	84	—	P. 13-12
	Sub-address setting	—	OFF	
	Prefix setting	—	国際発信 (Prefix: 0046010)	
	Int'l dial assistance	—	Auto Int'l Call Set.: ON, Country Code Setting: 日本 (Country Code: 81), IDD Prefix setting: 国際発信 (IDD Prefix Code: 0046010)	P. 13-12
	Headset sw to dial	—	OFF	P. 13-11



Menu List

Mail Setting under Mail

3rd-level Menu	4th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Custom Mail Address	—	—	—	P. 13-15
Read out setting	Select voice	—	Female 1	P. 13-16
	Read out received mail	—	ON	
Sound/Display Settings	Ring tone	—	You've got mail 1	P. 13-8
	Ring volume	—	Level 5	
	Ring time	68	Mail: ON (Ring Time: 05 Seconds)	P. 13-9
	Receiving disp.	—	Flying Type	P. 13-4
	Sending disp.	—	Flying Type	
	Retrieve New	—	Flying Type	P. 13-4
	Mail rec'd result	—	Flying Type	
Vibrator	—	—	OFF	P. 13-8
Illumination	—	—	Color 6	P. 13-9
Character input set	Font size	—	Large	P. 13-16
	Input mode	—	5-touch	P. 13-25
Input Support	Common Phrases	38	—	P. 2-13
	Own Dictionary	82	—	P. 2-13
	DL Dictionary	—	—	P. 2-14



Menu List

3rd-level Menu	4th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Other settings	Mail Member	97	—	P. 5-4
	Mail box lock	—	Inbox to Server mail: All canceled	P. 5-14
	Header/Signature	—	Edit header, Edit signature: Unsaved, Edit Quotation marks: >, Insert setting: All selected	P. 13-15, P. 13-16
	Scroll	—	1 line	P. 13-16
	Mail list disp.	—	1 line+body	
	Receiving setting	—	Operation preferred	P. 13-16
	Start attachment (auto)	—	OFF	P. 13-16
	3D display setting	—	ON	P. 13-6
	Emotion/Keyword	—	Disp. emotion: ON, Disp. keyword: OFF	P. 13-15
	SI Mail settings	—	Message Download: Auto (All), Delivery Report: OFF	P. 13-15, P. 13-16
	SMS settings	—	SMS report request: OFF, SMS validity period: 3 days, SMS input character: Japanese (70char.)	P. 13-15
	Quake Alert settings	—	Receiving: OFF, Duration: 10, For Manner Mode: Ring in manner mode	P. 5-10
	Check settings	—	—	P. 13-17
Reset	—	—		



Menu List

PC Site Browser under Yahoo! Keitai

3rd-level Menu	4th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Home	—	—	—	P. 6-5
Bookmark	—	—	—	P. 6-10
History	—	—	—	P. 6-6
Enter URL	—	—	—	
Yahoo! Keitai	—	—	—	P. 6-3
PC Site Brw. Settings	Warning Messages	—	ON	P. 13-19
	Scroll	—	Single Line	P. 13-18
	Display Mode Settings	—	PC Screen: 120%, Small Screen: Large	P. 13-19
	Downloads	—	Display Images: ON, Play Sounds: ON	P. 13-18
	Memory Manager	—	—	
	Security	—	Manufacture Number: ON, Send Referer: ON, Cookie Settings: Enabled, Script Settings: ON	
	Check PC Site Brw. Set.	—	—	
	Initialized Browser	—	—	
Reset PC Site Brw. Set.	—	—		



Menu List

S! Quick News under Yahoo!Keitai

3rd-level Menu	4th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
S! Quick News List	—	—	—	P. 6-12
Settings	Auto Refresh	—	S! Quick News, General: OFF, Special: ON	P. 13-19
	Standby Settings	—	Standby Disp. Set.: ON, Speed Settings: Normal, Unread & Read Set.: Unread & Read	
	Set Image Disp.	—	ON	
	Del. Quick News	—	—	

S! Info Ch./Weather under Yahoo!Keitai

3rd-level Menu	4th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
What's New	—	—	—	P. 6-13
History	—	—	—	
Register/Cancel	—	—	—	
Get Latest Contents	—	—	—	
Settings	S! Information Notif.	—	ON	P. 13-20
	Font Size	—	Large	
Weather Indicator	Weather	—	—	P. 6-13
	Manual Update	—	—	P. 6-20
	Settings	—	All ON	P. 13-20



Menu List

User Settings for TV under TV/Music

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Subtitles	—	—	ON (Wide: Bottom)	P. 13-21
Rec. While Low Battery	—	—	ON	P. 13-22
TV Sound While Closed	—	—	ON	P. 13-21
TV Power Saving	—	—	OFF (not set)	
Display Light	—	—	Constant Light	
Data BC Settings	Set Image Disp.	—	ON	
	Sound Effect	—	ON	P. 13-22
	Reset Disp. Set.	—	—	
Icon Always Show	—	—	ON	
Check TV Settings	—	—	—	P. 13-22
Reset Channel Setting	—	—	—	
Reset Storage Area	—	—	—	
Reset TV Settings	—	—	—	

Other Settings for Stand-by display under Display

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Stand-by display	—	56	Differs according to the model color.	P. 13-3
Desktop icon	—	63	Theme 1 (TV, Photo Mode, Pedometer, Loupe)	P. 13-6
Clock display	Clock display	39	Display: ON, Size: Bigger, Color: White	P. 13-2
	World clock display	—	display method: OFF, Summer time: OFF	
Wake-up display	—	56	Flying Type	P. 13-4



Menu List

Other settings for Display under Settings

4th-level Menu	5th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Backlight	—	70	Lighting: ON+Saver (Light time: 02 minutes), Charging: Standard, Area: LCD+Keys, Brightness: ON+Middle	P. 13-5
言語選択 (Language)	—	15	日本語	P. 13-4
Viewer settings	—	—	Picture	P. 13-4
Icons	—	36	—	P. 1-8
Icons setting	—	—	ON	P. 13-8
Privacy angle	—	—	OFF	P. 13-4
Quick Info setting	—	—	Display sender	

Functions when Menu Theme is *Basic Menu* (Display under Settings)*

3rd-level Menu	4th-level Menu	Menu Item No.	Default Setting	Refer to
Original menu	—	52	Account Details, Retrieve New, Ring volume, Vibrator, Alarm, Change security code	P. 13-7

*In *Basic Menu*, handset operations will differ from descriptions in this guide.



Main Specifications

Model	831N	
Dimensions (H x W x D) (When Closed)	Approx. 105 x 49 x 16.6mm (thickest Part: 19.9mm)	
Weight	Approx. 117 g	
Continuous Standby Time	Approx. 800hrs ¹	
Continuous Talk Time	Voice Call: Approx. 280 min. Video Call: Approx. 140 min.	
Charging Time	Max. 130 min.	
Display/ External Display	Type	Display: TFT 262,144 colors External Display: STN monochrome 2-tone
	Size	Display: Approx. 3.0 inches External Display: Approx. 1.6 inches
	Pixels	Display: 102,480 pixels (240 x 427 dots) External Display: 6,144 pixels (96 x 64 dots)

Camera	Imaging device	Front Camera: CMOS Rear Camera: CMOS
	Lens size	Front Camera: 1/8.0 inch Rear Camera: 1/4.0 inch
	Effective pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.33 million pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 2.0 million pixels
	Recording pixels	Front Camera: Approx. 0.31 million pixels Rear Camera: Approx. 1.9 million pixels
	Zoom (digital)	Front Camera: Up to approx. 2.0 x Rear Camera: Up to approx. 4.6 x
	Still images	Up to approx. 1,000 files ²
	Still images for continuous shooting	4 to 20 files ³
	Still image file format	JPEG
	Video recording time	Handset: Up to approx. 276 sec. ⁴ Memory card: Up to approx. 120 min. ⁴
	Video file format	MP4



Specifications

TV	Continuous watching time	Approx. 340 min.
	Maximum recording time	Approx. 600 min. ⁵
Chaku-Uta [®] and Chaku-Uta Full [®]	Storage Capacity	Approx. 80 MB ⁶

- 1 Continuous standby time is reduced by handset settings and operating environment. Setting Quake Alert will decrease standby time by half or more.
- 2 When **Select size** is set to **SubQCIF(128x96)** and **Quality setting** is set to **Fine** (the file size is 10 KB).
- 3 Varies depending on the image size.
- 4 Time for recording when recorded in the following conditions:

	Handset	Memory card
Image size	SubQCIF (128 × 96)	
Image quality	Normal	
File size	2MB	Long Time
Movie type	Normal	

- 5 Approximate time when recorded on a 2 GB memory card.
- 6 Shared with images, videos and saved pages.

Handset Materials

Where Used		Material/Finish
Outer casing (Display area, Keypad area)		PA resin + stainless plate, acrylic UV curable coating
Outer casing (Back of Display, back of Keypad)		PC resin, acrylic UV curable coating
Battery compartment	Screws	Iron, nickel plating
	Cover	PC resin, acrylic UV curable coating
	Terminals	Copper alloy, gold plating
Battery (terminals)		Epoxy resin (glass epoxy), gold plating



Maximum Number of Storable Items

Item		Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Phone Book entries		1,000 ¹	—
Schedule	Events	500	—
To Do List	Tasks	100	—
Mail	Received messages	1,000 ^{2 3 4 6}	1,000 ²
	Sent messages	400 ^{2 3 4}	200 ²
	Draft messages	20 ²	—
Quake Alert		100	—
Bookmarks	Yahoo! Keitai	100 ⁵	—
	PC Site Browser	100 ⁵	—
Saved Pages		100 ²	50 ²
S! Appli		99 ^{2 6}	—
Still images		1,000 ^{2 4}	—
Videos		100 ^{2 5}	—
Still images captured with TV		100 ²	—
Melodies		200 ²	—
Songs		100 ²	—
Template (Graphic Mail)		45 ⁶	—
Answering Machine	Voice calls	5 (20 sec. each)	—
	Video calls	2 (20 sec. each)	—

Item	Maximum Number	Maximum That Can be Protected
Voice Memo	1 (20 sec.)	—
Dialed Calls	30	—
Received Calls	30	—
Speed Dial	10 (Entry Number 000-009)	—

- 1 Up to 50 entries can be saved on USIM Card.
- 2 The actual number that can be saved or protected may be less depending on the data size.
- 3 An additional 10 received and sent SMS messages can be saved on USIM Card.
- 4 Up to 100 additional messages/files can be saved in Secret Folders.
- 5 Up to 10 additional files can be saved in Secret Folder.
- 6 Includes data stored by default.



Memory Card Folders & Files

Folder			File	
DCIM	XXXNECDT ¹		Still images captured with Camera and JPEG images copied or moved from handset	
MISC			Settings file for DPOF printing	
PRIVATE	MYFOLDER	Mail	Inbox	Backup data of Inbox
			Sent Messages	Backup data of Outbox
			Drafts	Backup data of Draft
		Utility	Calendar	Backup data of Schedule
			Contacts	Backup data of Phone Book
			Memo	Backup data of Text Memo
			Rights	Backup file of content keys
			Tasks	Backup file of To Do List
		My Items	Bookmarks	Backup file of Bookmarks
			Flash(R)	Flash [®] files
			Games and More	S! Appli files
			Music	Songs
			Pictograms	My Pictograms
			Pictures	Still images
			Sounds & Ringtones	Melodies
Videos	Videos			
NE_Folder		Other files		



Specifications

Folder		File
SD_VIDEO	MGR_INFO	TV Program recording management file
	PRGXXX ²	TV Program recording files

1 XXX: Three single-byte numbers from 100 to 999

2 XXX: Three single-byte alphanumeric characters (hexadecimal) from 001 to FFF



Number

2-touch Mode	2-14
3D display setting	13-6
5-touch Mode	2-10

A

Access Files	11-3
Composite image	11-14
List setting	11-15
Set image disp.	11-14
Access Handset Functions	2-2
Access History	6-3, 6-6
Delete	6-15
Access the Internet	
From Bookmarks	6-10
From Data Broadcasts	8-6
From Entered URL Record	6-15
From Scanned Data	10-28
From TV Links	8-13
From URL in Text	5-23
From Web Page	6-16
Multi Window	6-7
PC Site Browser	6-5
Use Access History	6-3, 6-6
Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
Account Details	1-23
Add Folder	
Bookmark	6-18
Data Folder	11-9

Messages	5-22
Adjust Earpiece Volume ...	3-3, 3-8, 3-16
After Sales Service	14-53
Alarm	10-15
Cancel	10-16
Edit	10-27
Release all	10-27
Set	10-15
Alarm Activation Operations	10-15
Alarm Notification Operations	
Schedule	10-8
To Do List	10-10
Alarm Setting	10-15
Answer Calls	
Video Calls	3-8
Voice Calls	3-4
Answer setting	13-9
Answering Machine	
Activate When Call Arrives	3-4
Delete Messages	3-18
Play Messages	3-5
Settings	3-4
Answering machine	3-4
Any key answer	13-9
Attach to Mail	
Bookmark	6-18
Delete Attached Files	5-18
Files	5-3
Shot Still Image/Video	5-18
Authentication Password	12-3

Auto answer setting	13-11
Auto Power On/Off	13-3
Auto redial as voice	13-14
Auto Refresh (S! Quick News)	13-19
Auto reset total cost	13-13
Auto save set	7-4
Auto Timer	7-10
Auto-sort	5-14

B

Backlight	13-5
Backlight Settings (S! Appli)	13-24
Bar Code Reader	10-20
Check Scanned Data	10-20
Delete Scanned Data	10-29
Scan	10-20
Basic Key Operations	1-3
Battery	1-15
Installation	1-15
Bookmarks	6-10
Access Page	6-10
Add Folder	6-18
Delete	6-19
Delete Folder	6-18
Edit URL	6-18
Move	6-18
Number of Bookmarks	6-18
Save	6-10
Save Scanned URL	10-28



Send by Mail 6-18
 Sort Folder 6-18

C

Calculator 10-14
Call Barring 3-20
Call Forward 3-14
Call Rejection 3-16
Call Time/Charge 3-11
Call Waiting 3-19
Call While Abroad 3-13
Caller ID 3-20
Camera 7-2
 Auto save set 7-4
 Capture Still Images 7-5
 Color mode set 7-12
 Flicker 7-12
 Memory info 7-12
 Movie type set 7-12
 Quality setting 7-12
 Record Videos 7-7
 Settings 13-23
 Switch Cameras 7-4
 Viewfinders 7-3
Capture Still Images 7-5
 Auto timer 7-10
 Continuous Shooting 7-9
 Frame 7-9
Center Access Code 1-22
Certificate 6-16

Chance Capture 7-10
Change
 Entry Number 2-26
 Font Size (Message Text) 5-24
 Graphic Mail Effects 5-19
 Icon Image 2-23
 Network Password 3-20
 PIN1/PIN2 4-2
 Security Code 1-22
 Set To, Cc or Bcc 5-17
Change Skin 13-24
Channel List 13-21
 Delete a Channel 13-21
 Remote Control Numbers 13-21
 Save Stations of a Different Area 8-12
 Switch 8-12
Channel Settings 8-3
 Automatic 8-12
Character/Font 13-5
Character stamp 11-7
Charge Battery 1-15
 AC Charger 1-17
 Desktop Holder 1-18
Charge sound 13-10
Check Battery Level 1-23
Check PC Site Brw. Set 13-18
Check settings (Mail) 13-17
Check settings (Yahoo! Keitai) ... 13-18
Check TV Settings 13-22
CHG input method 2-10

CHG Input Size 13-25
Clear Learned (Text Entry) 13-25
Clock Alarm Tone Set 13-2
Clock display 13-2
Closed Illumination 13-26
Codes 1-22
 Center Access Code 1-22
 Network Password 1-22
 PIN1/PIN2 1-13
 Security Code 1-22
Color theme/Icon 13-4
Compose & Send Messages
 Attach Files 5-3
 Compose S! Mail 5-3
 Compose SMS 5-5
 Delete receiver 5-17
 Edit 5-23
 From Phone Book 2-27
 From Scanned Data 10-28
 From Tomo-Den 3-12
 From Web Page 6-16
 Graphic Mail 5-4
 Insert Header/Signature 5-17
 Save 5-18
 Specify Mail Member List Recipients 5-17
 To, Cc or Bcc 5-17
Compose Messages 5-3, 5-5
Continuous Shooting 7-9
Cookie Settings (Internet) 13-18



Copy

Between Handset & Memory Card	11-12
Event	10-26
Phone Book Entries	2-22, 2-27
SMS Messages	5-22
Text	2-12
Customer Service	14-54
Customize E-Mail Address	13-15

D

Data BC Settings	13-22
Data Broadcasts	8-6
Data Folder	11-2
Add Folder	11-9
Change Order of Files	11-14
Check File Information	11-14
Delete Files	11-16
Delete Folder	11-15
Edit file name	11-16
Edit folder name	11-15
Edit Still Images	11-7
Edit Videos	11-8
Memory info	11-16
Move Files	11-9
Open Files	11-3
Original animation	11-4
Playlist (Melody)	11-5
Playlist (Video)	11-5
Ringtone	11-14
Secret Folders	4-6

Stand-by display	11-14
Delete All LifeApp	13-26
Delete All S! App	13-24
Delete Cache	13-18
Delete Cookies	13-18
Delete Quick News	13-19
Delivery Report (S! Mail)	13-15
Desktop Icons	2-3, 13-6
Add Icons	2-5
CHG icon image	2-23
Delete Desktop Icons	2-23
Delete Notifications	2-23
Reset	2-23
Show/Hide	2-23
Sort	2-23

Dial

From Dialed Calls	3-10
From Phone Book	2-19
From Received Calls	3-10
From Redial	3-10
From Scanned Data	10-28
From Tomo-Den	3-12
From Web Page	6-16
Global Roaming	3-13
International Calls	3-3
Phone Number in Message Text	5-23
Video Calls	3-7
Voice Calls	3-3
Dial Lock	4-3
Dialed Calls	3-10

Dialing/Calling disp.	13-4, 13-9
Dictionaries	2-13
Disp. call/receive No.	13-10
Disp. phonebook image	13-9
Display Indicators	1-7
Display Light (TV)	13-21
Display Mode Settings	13-19
Display operator name	13-14
Display Setting	13-3
DL Dictionary	2-14
Delete	2-26
Download	
Music	9-4
S! Appli	9-8
Templates (Graphic Mail)	5-19
Downloads	13-18
DPOF setting	11-13
Cancel	11-17

E

Edit

Address (Mail Member)	5-18
Alarm Settings	10-27
Event	10-26
File Name (Data Folder)	11-16
Folder Name (Bookmark)	6-18
Folder Name (Data Folder)	11-15
Folder Name (Messages)	5-22
Folder Name (Templates)	2-25



Mail Member List Name	5-18
Own Dictionary	2-25
Phone Book Entry	2-27
Record Timer Settings	8-15
Re-entering in T9 Input Mode	2-15
Still Images	11-7
Template (Graphic Mail)	5-19
Templates (Common Phrases)	2-13, 2-25
Text	2-12
URL (Bookmark)	6-18
Videos	11-8
View Timer Settings	8-15
Edit Still Images	11-7
Brightness	11-15
Change Size	11-15
Character stamp	11-7
Correct backlight	11-15
Frame	11-7
Marker stamp	11-7
Refresh Skin Tone	11-15
Retouch	11-15
Rotate	11-15
Trim away	11-8
Edit Videos	11-8
Emission OFF Mode	4-5
Emotion/Keyword	13-15
Emotion-Expressing Mail	5-6
Enter URL	6-3, 6-6
Delete Records	6-16
External Display	1-9

External Display Settings	13-8
--	-------------

F

FeliCa Mark	1-2
IC Card notice set.	13-26
Osaifu-Keitai®	10-2
Flash Sound Effect	13-18
Font	13-5
Font Size (Internet)	13-18
Font Size (Mail)	13-16
Font Size (S! Info Channel)	13-20
Forward (Message)	5-23
Forwarding Image (Phone Book)	13-12
Frame	7-9, 11-7
Front camera Reverse	13-14

G

Global Roaming	3-13
Call Japan and Other Countries	3-13
Call within the Same Country	3-13
Settings	13-14
Graphic Mail	5-19
Cancel Effects	5-19
Create	5-4
Create Automatically	5-19
Create from a Template	5-19
Delete Templates	5-19
Edit a Template	5-19

Save Template	5-19
Group Calling	3-19
Group Setting (Phone Book)	13-12
Ring tone/image	2-21

H

Handset Parts	1-2
Handsfree	3-17
Hands-free switch (Video Call) ...	13-14
Header/Signature	13-15, 13-16
Headset sw to dial	13-11
Headset usage setting	13-11
Holidays & Anniversaries	10-8
Hyper Clear Voice	3-17, 13-13

I

IC Card notice set.	13-26
Icon Always Show (TV)	13-21
Icons Setting	13-8
Illumination	13-9
Illumination in talk	13-13
Image	7-5
Capture	7-5
Edit	11-7
Incoming Message Image	13-9
Indicator display	1-9
Info notice setting	13-10
Infrared	12-2
Authentication Password	12-3



Receive All	12-4
Receive One File	12-3
Send all Ir data	12-3
Send One File	12-3
Infrared Port	1-2
Initial Setup	1-19
Initialize	13-26
Initialized Browser	13-18
Input Mode	13-25
Insertion & Removal	
Battery	1-15
Memory Card	11-10
USIM Card	1-14
Internal Antenna	1-2
International Calls	3-3
Enter “ + ”	3-16
Internet	6-2
Access History	6-3, 6-6
Connect	6-3, 6-5
Enter URL	6-3, 6-6
Home	6-15
Page Operations	6-7
Quick Search	6-17
Reload	6-16
Send URL by Mail	6-16
Settings	13-18
Interval/Number	13-23

J

JAN Code	10-20
-----------------------	--------------

K

Key Backlight	13-26
Keypad lock	4-4
Setting	4-4
Unlock Temporarily	4-4
Keypad sound	13-10

L

Language (言語選択)	13-4
Life History Viewer	10-5
Display setting	10-25
Reload	10-25

Lock

Dial Lock	4-3
IC Card Lock	10-3
Keypad lock	4-4
Original Lock	4-3
Remote Lock	10-4
Secure Remote Lock	4-4

M

Macro Switch	1-2
Magnifying Glass	10-19
Mail	5-2
Add Folder	5-22
Auto-sort	5-14
Delete	5-21
Delete all reports	5-21
Delete Attached Files	5-22

Delete Folder	5-22
Delete Read	5-21
Draft	5-23
Edit	5-23
Filter	5-24
Folder lock	5-14
Forward	5-23
Mail box lock	5-14
Mail Windows	5-13
Message Storage Locations	5-12
Move	5-21
Move Messages to Trash Box	5-21
Number of Messages	5-22
Protect	5-21
Search mail	5-24
Secret Folders	5-15
Settings	13-15
Sort	5-24
Sort folder	5-22
Mail list disp.	13-16
Mail Member	5-4
Add Addresses	5-4
Delete Addresses	5-18
Edit Address	5-18
Specify Recipients	5-17
Mail Setting	13-15
Main display (Video Call)	13-14
Main Menu	2-2
Change Theme	2-23
Manner Mode	1-21
Manner Mode Set	13-10



Original	13-10
Manufacture Number	13-18
Marker stamp	11-7
Melody Playback	
Playlist	11-5
Set repeat play	11-15
Memory Card	11-10
Access Data	11-11
Access Files	11-3
Check & Repair	11-16
Check Available Memory Space	11-16
Copy Data from Handset	11-12
Copy Data to Handset	11-12
Delete Data	11-17
DPOF setting	11-13
Folders & Files	14-39
Format	11-11
Insert & Remove	11-10
Memory Space (Memory info)	
Bookmarks	6-18
Camera	7-12
Data Folder	11-16
Memory Card	11-16
Messages	5-22
Music	9-10
Number of Saved Pages	6-19
Phone Book	2-27
S! Appli	9-11
Schedules	10-26
Server mail memory	5-20
Menu display set	13-7

Menu List	14-20
Message Download	13-16
Missed Calls	3-10
Modem	12-6
Move	
Bookmarks	6-18
Files	11-9
Messages	5-21
Multitask	2-8
Activate Another Function	2-8
Combinations	14-2
Toggle Functions	2-8
Music Player (Video Player)	9-2
Playback Windows	9-3
Settings	13-24
My Phone Number	1-23

N

Net Access	13-24
Network Information	1-19
Network Password	1-22
Noise reduction	13-13
Notify Caller ID	3-16
Number of Entries	
Bookmarks	6-18
Events	10-26
Phone Book Entries	2-27
Saved Messages	5-22
NW search mode	13-14

O

On hold tone	13-13
One Seg Digital TV	8-2
One-Touch Open	1-6
Open Inbox Messages	5-6
Open New Messages	5-6
Optional Services	3-14
Original Animation	11-4
Original Lock	4-3
Customize	4-4
Settings	4-3
Original Manner Mode	13-10
Original Menu	2-3, 13-7
Osai-fu-Keitai®	10-2
Activate Lifestyle-Appli	10-3
Download Lifestyle-Appli	10-2
Restrict Use	10-3
Settings	13-26
Use	10-3
Own Dictionary	2-13
Delete	2-26
Edit	2-25

P

Pause Dial	13-12
PC Connection	12-5
Access Memory Card Data	12-5
Packet Transmission	12-6
USB mode setting	12-5



PC Site Browser	6-5	Change PIN1/PIN2	4-2	Settings	5-10
Change Disp. Mode	6-15	PIN1 Code Entry Set	4-2	Quality alarm	13-13
Windows	6-5	Place Calls on Hold	3-16	Quick info setting	13-4
Pedometer	10-17	Play		Quick Search	5-23, 6-17, 10-26
Activate	10-18	Answering Machine	3-5	Quick silent	13-9
Reset	10-27	Music	9-5	Quotation marks	13-16
Set	10-17	Playlist	9-6		
View Data	10-17	Recorded Program	8-8		
Phone Book		Voice Announce	13-10		
Access Entries from Other Functions	2-20	Voice Mail	3-15		
Change Entry Number	2-26	Voice Memo	3-5		
Change Index Tab	2-26	Playlist (Songs)	9-6		
Check Number of Entries	2-27	Add Music	9-11		
Copy	2-27	Cancel Playlist Songs	9-11		
Copy to USIM Card	2-22	Create	9-6		
Create Entries	2-18	Delete	9-11		
Create Entries from Other Functions	2-18	Play	9-6		
Delete Entries	2-27	Sort Playlist	9-11		
Delete Items	2-28	PLMN Setting	13-14		
Dial	2-19	Power On/Off	1-19		
Edit an Entry	2-27	Prefix numbers	3-16		
Group Setting	13-12	Prefix setting	13-12		
Restrictions	2-21	Privacy angle	13-4		
Ring tone/Image	2-21	Program Guide	8-6		
Save from Scanned Data	10-28				
Search	2-19				
Set Incoming Image	2-18				
Set Preferred Search Method	13-12				
Set Secret	2-22				
PIN Lock & Cancellation	1-13				
PIN1/PIN2	1-13				

R

Read out message	5-20
Read out setting	13-16
Receive & Open Messages	5-6
Manually Retrieve Messages	5-20
Open Inbox Messages	5-6
Open New Messages	5-6
Read out message	5-20
Reply	5-7
Retrieve Complete S! Mail	5-20
Save Attachments	5-15
Use Mail List	5-7
Received Calls	3-10
Receiving setting	13-16
Reconnect signal	13-13
Record at Low Battery	13-22
Record Sound	
Sound without Video (Voice Mode)	7-10
Voice Announce	13-10
Voice Memo	3-4, 10-13
Record Timer	8-10
Record Videos	7-7

Q

QR Code	10-20
Quake Alert	5-9
Receiving	5-10
Receiving (setting)	5-10



Auto timer	7-10
Chance Capture	7-10
Voice Mode	7-10
Redial	3-10
Register S! Quick News	
Contents	6-12
Reject Calls w/o Caller ID	4-5
Reject unknown	4-5
Remote Control Numbers	13-21
Reply to Messages	5-7
Reset	
Channel Settings	13-22
Confirmation Window	
(Data Broadcasts)	13-22
Desktop Icons	2-23
Folder Name (Common Phrases)	2-25
Handset	13-26
Holidays	10-26
Mail Member List Name	5-18
Mail Settings	13-17
Memory Card	11-11
My Phone Number	1-23
Original Menu	13-7
PC Site Browser Settings	13-18
Pedometer Measurements	10-27
S! Appli Settings	13-24
S! Quick News Contents	13-19
SMS Center Selection	13-17
Total Call Cost	3-18
Total Call Time	3-18

TV Settings	13-22
Yahoo! Keitai Settings	13-18
Reset (Mail)	13-17
Reset (S! Appli)	13-24
Reset (Yahoo! Keitai)	13-18
Reset Channel Setting	13-22
Reset PC Site Brw. Set	13-18
Reset Settings	13-26
Reset Storage Area (TV)	13-22
Reset Total Cost	3-18
Reset total duration	3-18
Reset TV Settings	13-22
Retrieve New	5-20
Ring time (Delay)	4-5
Ring time (Mail)	13-9
Ring time (sec.)	4-5
Ring Volume	13-8

S

S! Appli	9-8
Activate	9-8
Delete	9-11
Download	9-8
Settings	13-24
S! Info Channel	6-13
Check Latest Information	6-13
Get Latest Contents	6-20
Save File	6-20
Settings	13-20

Subscribe for Service	6-13
Weather Indicators	6-13
S! Information Notif.	13-20

S! Quick News	
Check Updated Information	6-12
Delete Registered News	6-19
Manually Update	6-19
Register News	6-12
Settings	13-19

Save

Bookmarks	6-10
Events	10-7
Holidays & Anniversaries	10-8
Mail Member List	5-4
Own Dictionary	2-13
Phone Book Entries	2-18
S! Quick News	6-12
Saved Pages	6-10
Schedule Icons	10-7
Tasks	10-10
Templates	2-13
Text Memos	10-12
Tomo-Den	3-12
TV Links	8-13

Saved Pages	6-10
Delete	6-19
Number of Pages	6-19
Open	6-10
Protect	6-19
Save	6-10
Schedule (Events)	10-7



Index

Check	10-8
Copy	10-26
Delete	10-9, 10-26
Edit	10-26
Holidays & Anniversaries	10-8
Icon display	10-25
Number of Schedules	10-26
Reset holiday	10-26
Save	10-7
Save a Text Memo to Schedule	10-27
Secret Data	10-8
Windows	10-7
Screen Effect	13-5
Script Settings	13-18
Scroll (Internet)	13-18
Scroll (Mail)	13-16
Search	
Messages in a Folder	5-24
Phone Book	2-19
Songs	9-10
Secret Data	
Phone Book Entries	2-22
Schedule	10-8
Secret Data Only Mode	4-6
Secret Folders	4-6
Secret Mode	4-6
Secure Remote Lock	4-4
Security Code	1-22
Select image (Video Call)	13-14
Select microphone	13-11
Send Location Info	13-20
Send Messages	5-3
Check Delivery	5-18
Send Referer	13-18
Server Mail	5-7
Delete	5-20
Forward	5-20
Mail List	5-7, 5-20
Set Image Disp. (S! Quick News)	13-19
Set Image Disp. (Video Player) ...	13-24
Set main time	13-2
Set Max Cost Limit	13-13
Set Ringtone	13-8
From Data Folder	11-14
Setting when folded	13-13
Setting when opened	13-25
Shoot Framed Images	7-9
Shooting	
Auto Timer	7-10
Chance Capture	7-10
Continuous Shooting	7-9
Frame	7-9
Still Images	7-5
Videos	7-7
Shortcut-key Setting	13-25
Shutter Sound	13-23
Side Key Guard	1-24
SMS	
Receive	5-6
Send	5-5
SMS center selection	13-17
SMS settings	13-15
Software Update	14-4
Songs	
BGM playback	9-10
Download	9-4
Effect	9-10
Memory info	9-10
Play	9-5
Playlist	9-6
Repeat setting	9-10
Resume play	9-10
Search	9-10
Set as Ringtone	9-10
Sort	9-10
SRS_WOW	9-10
Sort (Change Order)	
Booked Programs	8-15
Desktop Icons	2-23
Files	11-14
Folders (Bookmark)	6-18
Folders (Mail)	5-22
Messages	5-24
Original Menu Items	13-7
Playlist Songs	9-11
Songs	9-10
Tasks	10-26
Sound/Vib Settings	13-24



Specifications	14-36
Stand-by display	13-6
Standby Setting (Weather Indicators)	13-20
Standby Settings (S! Quick News)	13-19
Start attachment (auto)	13-16
Stereo Earphone Conversion Cable	1-23
Storage Location (Camera)	13-23
Style Mode Settings	13-3
Sub-address setting	13-12
Subtitles	13-21
Summer time	13-2

T

T9 change mode	13-25
T9 Input Mode	2-14
Templates (Common Phrases) Delete	2-25
Edit	2-13, 2-25
Insert	2-12
Text Entry	2-9
2-touch Mode	2-14
5-touch Mode	2-10
Alphanumerics, Numbers & Katakana	2-12
Character Entry Modes	2-10
Common Phrases (Templates)	2-12
Copy	2-12

Correction	2-12
Cut	2-12
Dakuten (゛) & Handakuten (゜)	2-12
Deletion	2-12
Emoticons	2-12
Key Assignments	14-10
Kuten Code List	14-13
Kuten Codes	2-25
Line Feed	2-24
Lower Case	2-12
Lower Case & Upper Case	2-24
Overwrite & Insert Modes	2-24
Paste	2-12
Pictographs	2-12
Quote data	2-25
Settings	13-25
Single-byte & Double-byte	2-24
Space	2-24
Split Windows	2-10
Symbols	2-12
T9 Input Mode	2-14
Text Entry Window	2-9
Text Input Methods	2-10
Use Dictionary	2-24
Word Prediction	2-10
Text Memo	10-12
Check Information	10-27
Delete	10-12, 10-27
Save	10-12
Save from Scanned Data	10-29
Sort	10-27

Text Reader	10-22
Check Scanned Text	10-23
Delete Scanned Data	10-29
Edit Scanned Text	10-28
NEGA/POSI mode	10-28
Scan	10-23
Scan Modes	10-22
Text Scanning Window	10-22
To Do List (Tasks)	10-10
Change Order	10-26
Check	10-10
Delete	10-11, 10-26
Save	10-10
Set Status	10-26
Tomo-Den	3-12
Cancel Entries	3-18
Dial	3-12
Save Entries	3-12
Send Messages	3-12
Trim away (Still Image)	11-8
Troubleshooting	14-6
TV	8-2
Brightness	8-12
Channel Settings	8-3
Data Broadcasts	8-6
Main/Sub Sound	8-12
Program Guide	8-6
Program Info	8-12
Record	8-8
Record Timer	8-10
Settings	13-21



Sound Switch	8-12
View Timer	8-10
Watch	8-5
Windows	8-4
TV Link	
Delete	8-13
Number of TV Links	8-13
Save	8-13
Show Details	8-13
TV Power Saving	13-21
TV Sound While Closed	13-21

U

Update

Data Broadcast	8-13
Life History Viewer	10-25
S! Quick News List	6-19
Server Mail List	5-7, 5-20
Web Page	6-16
USB Mode setting	12-5
USIM Card	1-12
Copy Phone Book Entries	2-22, 2-27
Copy SMS Messages	5-22
Delete Phone Book Entries	2-28
Delete SMS Messages	5-22
Insertion & Removal	1-14
PINs	1-13

V

Vibration level	13-25
------------------------------	--------------

Vibration setting	13-8
Video Call	3-7
Brightness	3-17
Color mode set	3-17
Display light	3-17
Hyper Clear Voice	3-17
Settings	13-14
Visual prefer.	3-17
White balance	3-17
Windows	3-7

Videos

Playlist	11-5
----------------	------

View Timer	8-10
-------------------------	-------------

Viewer settings	13-4
------------------------------	-------------

Voice Announce	13-10
-----------------------------	--------------

Voice Call	3-3
-------------------------	------------

Hyper Clear Voice	3-17
Send Touch Tones	3-17

Voice Mail	3-14
-------------------------	-------------

Missed Call Notification	3-15
Play Messages	3-15

Voice Memo	3-4, 10-13
-------------------------	-------------------

Play/Delete Messages	3-5, 3-18
Record the Other Party's Voice	3-4
Record Your Voice	10-13

W

Wallpaper (Stand-by Display)	13-3
---	-------------

Image in Data Folder	11-14
Recorded Video	7-12

Shot Still Image	7-12
Video in Data Folder	11-14

Warning Messages	13-19
-------------------------------	--------------

Warranty	14-53
-----------------------	--------------

Weather Indicators	6-13
---------------------------------	-------------

Indicator List	14-19
Manual Update	6-20
Settings	13-20
Subscribe for Service	6-13

Weather Notif.	13-20
----------------------------	--------------

Weather Update	13-20
-----------------------------	--------------

Word Prediction	2-10, 13-25
------------------------------	--------------------

World clock display	13-2
----------------------------------	-------------

Write/Del User Data	13-24
----------------------------------	--------------

Y

Yahoo! Keitai	6-3
----------------------------	------------

Switch to PC	6-15
--------------------	------



Warranty & After Sales Service

Warranty

A warranty card is included with 831N.

- Check that the store name and purchase date sections have been filled correctly.
- Read the card carefully and store it in a safe place.
- See the card for the warranty period.

After Sales Service

Refer to “Troubleshooting” (P. 14-6) before submitting your handset for repair.

If problems still persist, contact SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, Customer Assistance of your area (P. 14-53), or consult with your nearest SoftBank shop.

Provide us with detailed information of your problems.

- Repair within the warranty period is carried out in accordance with the conditions of the warranty.
- Repair after the warranty period is carried out if possible, and the owner of handset is responsible for any repair costs.

Note

- SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages incurred by you or third parties as a result of losing opportunities to make calls, etc. due to a failure or malfunction of this product.
- Data and settings you saved may be lost or altered as a result of failure or repair of handset. It is recommended that you keep a backup copy of important data (e.g. Phone Book entries, image and sound files).
SoftBank assumes no responsibility for any damages due to the loss or alteration of handset data.
- Disassembling or modifying handset may constitute a violation of Radio Law. Your handset will not be accepted for repairs if it has been modified.

Tip

- For information on after sales service, contact your nearest SoftBank shop or SoftBank Mobile Customer Center, General Information (P. 14-53).



Customer Service

If you have any questions about SoftBank handsets or services, call General Information.
For repairs, call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Mobile Global Call Center

From outside Japan, dial +81-3-5351-3491 (Make sure to dial the correct number. International charges will apply.)

■ Call These Numbers Toll Free from Landlines

Subscription Area	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	☎ 0088-240-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-240-113
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	☎ 0088-241-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-241-113
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	☎ 0088-242-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-242-113
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	☎ 0088-250-157
	Customer Assistance	☎ 0088-250-113

SoftBank 831N User Guide

October 2009, First Edition

SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.

For additional information,
please visit a SoftBank Shop.

Model: SoftBank 831N

Manufacturer: NEC Corporation

MDT-000132-EAA0